



# **STDM 1.5 User Manual**



# Revision: 12-03-2017

Copyright © 2017 by UN-Habitat. All Rights Reserved

#### **Table of Contents**

PREFACE	1
LICENSE OF THIS DOCUMENT	1
INTRODUCTION	2
Social Tenure Domain Model	
Core Values	
The STDM Universe	
WHAT'S NEW IN STDM VERSION 1.5?	
Database Configuration	
Copy Data Profile from Existing One	
Save Configuration as Draft	
Enhanced Input Validation	
Percent Column Type	
Auto Generated Code Column Type	5
Decimal Number Column Type	
Multi-Party Entity Types in Social Tenure Relationship	
Date Validity Ranges in Social Tenure Relationship	
Visual Representation of Social Tenure Relationship	
Social Tenure Relationship Views	
Current Profile Selection	
Social Tenure Relationship	
Social Tenure Relationship (STR) Editor	
Local Spatial Unit Preview	
Multiple Party Entity Tenure Share	
Tenure Validity Period	-
Multiple STR Entry	
View Social Tenure Relationship	
Entity Editor	
Data Import	
Importing Lookup Values	
Spatial Unit Manager	
GPS Feature Import Tool	
Spatial Entity Details	
Spatial Entity Browser	
Multi-Selection of Records and Features	
Ability to Control Map While Browsing Records	
View Social Tenure Relationship of the Selected Record	
Documents Designer	
Options	
General	
Software Packages	
Enabling PostGIS Extension	
GETTING TECHNICAL SUPPORT	
System Requirements	
Operating system Requirements	
Hardware Requirements	20
INSTALLING STDM	21
BEFORE INSTALLING	21
What do I need to install to have a fully functional STDM?	21
Do I need to uninstall previous installation of the above software?	21
Using Bundled STDM Installer	

INSTALLING FROM GLTN PLUGIN REPOSITORY	25
MIGRATION FROM PREVIOUS VERSION	27
Automatic Upgrade	
Manual Upgrade	
Failed STDM Installation	
Failure to Install after Uninstalling Previous Versions	
Failure to Install on Windows 7	
Failure to Install on Windows Server	
GETTING STARTED WITH STDM	
User Interface	
LOGGING INTO STDM	40
Logging into a Different Database and Server	
First Time Login	
LOGGING OUT OF STDM	
Working with Sample Data	45
RESETTING 'POSTGRES' PASSWORD IN LOCAL SERVER	45
CREATING AND CUSTOMIZING DATA PROFILES	
GETTING STARTED WITH THE CONFIGURATION WIZARD	50
Navigation buttons	
Creating and Saving of settings	
CREATING DRAFT CONFIGURATION	
Creating Draft Configuration Manually	
Creating Draft by Cancelling the Configuration Process	
Creating Draft by Copying a Profile	
Deleting a Draft Configuration	
Manual Delete	
Automatic Draft Deletion	
Configuring Directory Settings	
Modifying Supporting Document Path	
Modifying Documents Output Path	
Modifying Template Path	
Configuring Profiles	
Creating Profiles	
Copying Profile	
Customising Profiles	
Deleting Profiles	
Configuring Entities	
Creating Entities	
Editing Entities	
-	
Deleting Entities Configuring Columns	
Creating Columns	
Understanding Column Data Types	
1. Varying-length text	
2. Unlimited-length text	
3. Whole Number	
4. Decimal Number	
5. Date	
6. Date with time	
7. Geometry	
8. Yes/No	
9. Related Entity	

Copyright © 2017 by UN-Habitat. All Rights Reserved

10. Single Select Lookup	
11. Administrative Spatial Unit	
12. Multiple Select Lookup	
13. Auto Generated Code	
Editing Columns	
Deleting Columns	
Re-ordering Columns	
Configuring Lookups	94
Creating Lookups	
Editing Lookups	
Deleting Lookups	
CONFIGURING LOOKUP VALUES	
Creating Values	
Editing Values	
Deleting Values	
Re-ordering Values	
DEFINING SOCIAL TENURE RELATIONSHIP ENTITIES	
STR Overview	
Selecting Party and Spatial Unit Entity	
Setting One or More Parties per Spatial Unit	
SAVE CONFIGURATION TO DATABASE	
MANAGING ENTITY DATA	
Managing Administrative Unit	
Deleting an Administrative Unit	
Managing Entities	
Adding a Record	
Uploading Supporting Documents	
Adding Multiple Records	
Adding a Record Using a Subform	
Querying a Record	
Searching	
Viewing a Supporting Document	
Editing a Record	
Editing a Record Using a Subform	
Deleting a Record	
Managing Spatial Data	
Adding Imagery data	
Renaming Spatial Entity Layer	
Adding a Spatial Entity Layer	
Digitizing in a Spatial Entity Layer	
Importing GPS Data	
Viewing Extents of Spatial Entity Features	
Viewing a Spatial Entity Details	
MANAGING SOCIAL TENURE RELATIONSHIP	
Creating a Social Tenure Relationship	
Querying/ Viewing Social Tenure Relationship	
Editing Social Tenure Relationship	
Deleting a Social Tenure Relationship	
DESIGNING AND GENERATING DOCUMENTS	
DESIGNING A DOCUMENT TEMPLATE	
Getting Started with Document Designer	

Database Views for Document Templates	
What is Database View?	
STDM Views	
View Names	
View Layer	
Viewing View Data	
Custom Views	
Useful Links	
Tools of Document Designer	
STDM Document Designer Toolbar	
STDM Data Source	
STDM Item Properties	
Composition	
Item Properties	
Composer Item Toolbar	
Customizing a Template Page	
Adding Items into a Template	
Static Items	
Adding a Line	
Add Image	
Adding a Label	
Data Driven Items	
Adding a Data Label	
Adding Map	
Adding a Legend	
Adding Photo Adding Attribute Table	
Adding a Chart	
Managing a Template	
Saving a Template	
Opening a Template	
Editing File Name and Deleting a Template	
Tips and Workarounds	
Learn More about QGIS Print Composer	
Generating Documents Using Templates	
GENERATING DOCUMENTS USING TEMPLATES	
MANAGING DATA IMPORT AND EXPORT	
Formatting Spreadsheet Data	263
Adding a Date into a Cell	
-	
Creating Lookups in Microsoft Excel	
Adding the List to a Cell	
Removing Drop-down List Capitalizing Cell Text	
IMPORTING ATTRIBUTE DATA	
IMPORTING SPATIAL DATA	
IMPORTING SUPPORTING DOCUMENTS.	
IMPORTING DATA TO RELATED TABLE COLUMNS	
Importing into Lookup Columns	
EXPORT DATA FROM THE STDM	
SETTINGS	
Managing User and Roles	
User Management	
Create a User	
Edit a User	
Delete a User	

Role Management	
Create a Role	
Delete Role	
User Mappings	
Content Authorization	
Options	
Changing the Current Profile	
Modifying Database Connection Settings	
Modifying STDM Folders	
Upgrading Old Configuration	
ANNEX A: WORKING WITH SPATIAL DATA IN QGIS	
Working with GPS	
BEFORE USING GPS	
What to know when using GPS in the field	
Working with Garmin GPS data	
DOWNLOADING GPS DATA FROM QGIS	
GEO-REFERENCING	
GLOSSARY	
INDEX	

# Preface

This document is the original user guide of the Social Tenure Domain Model (STDM) software. The software components described in this document are registered trademarks of their respective providers and are therefore subject to legal requirements. STDM is subject to the GNU General Public License. For more information regarding STDM, please visit the website at: <u>www.stdm.gltn.net</u>.

1

The details, data, and results in this document have been written and verified to the best of the knowledge and responsibility of the authors and editors. Nevertheless, mistakes concerning the content are possible. The data are not liable to any duties or guarantees. The authors, editors and publishers do not take any responsibility or liability for failures and their consequences. You are welcome to report possible mistakes.

# License of this Document

Permission is granted to copy, distribute and/or modify this document under the terms of the GNU Free Documentation License, Version 1.3 or any later version published by the Free Software Foundation; with no Invariant Sections, no Front-Cover Texts and no Back-Cover Texts. A copy of the GNU Free Documentation License can be found at <a href="https://www.gnu.org/licenses/fdl-1.3.en.html">https://www.gnu.org/licenses/fdl-1.3.en.html</a>.

# Introduction

# **Social Tenure Domain Model**

The Social Tenure Domain Model (STDM) is a pro-poor, gender responsive and participatory land information system developed by the Global Land Tool Network (GLTN). It is one of twenty-six land tools being developed, tested and applied by GLTN partners to promote secure land and property rights for all.

STDM, as it stands, has the capacity to broaden the scope of land administration by providing a land information management framework that would integrate formal, informal and customary land systems and administrative and spatial components. STDM makes this possible by incorporating tools that facilitate recording of all forms of land rights, all types of rights holders and all kinds of land and property objects/spatial units regardless of the level of formality.

# **Core Values**

STDM's core values and principles are pro-poor, good governance, equity, subsidiarity, sustainability, affordability, systematic large scale, and gender responsiveness.

## **The STDM Universe**

STDM is a pro-poor, participatory and affordable <u>land tool</u> that broadens the scope of land administration by incorporating all person/s to land relationships beyond formal/legal land rights, cognizant of the continuum of land rights. STDM has four inter-related components. These are:

- 1. A new way of thinking about land records
- 2. A free and open-source software package to record information about land
- 3. An approach of collecting data about land
- 4. A way of using and disseminating information about land

The STDM Universe consists of an extensible data model, conceptual and operational model, database implementation, software modules and an extensible architecture.

# What's New in STDM Version 1.5?

STDM 1.5 is a full release which includes enhanced functionality and stability improvements. The changes include the ability to save configuration as draft; copying an existing data profile; additional customization options pertaining to social tenure relationship; simpler importation of lookup values; direct switching of data profiles; identity tool for accessing the main information

pertaining to a spatial unit (such as tenure status and related parties) and user interface enhancements in the GPS import tool.

The following sections summarize the new features in STDM 1.5.

#### **Database Configuration**

#### **Copy Data Profile from Existing One**

This time saving Database Configuration feature allows you to make a copy of an existing profile as shown in the image below. If you identify a profile in your configuration that you would like to use as a template, now you can replicate it, rename it, edit and use it without designing a new configuration from scratch. This feature greatly saves on time and increases productivity.

elect	Informal_Se	ettlement	The second secon
escription	n: The Inform	al Settlemen	t profile is best suited to unplanned settlements with no planning and building regulations.
ofile en	ntities ——		
+	2 🔟		2 Copy profile
	Name		From Profile Informal_Settlement
1 Perso	on	A person	To Profile Informal_Settlement_copy
2 Struc	cture	A parcel	OK Cancel
		· · · ·	

#### Save Configuration as Draft

This feature provides the ability to save the current customization as a draft as shown in the image below. If one is configuring a complex profile that might take hours or days to finish, it is now possible to progressively save the customization as a draft until completion. The draft copy will be loaded automatically next time the Database Configuration Wizard is loaded.

 	_				
Options •		< Back	Next >	Cancel	Help
 Save draft					
Discard dra	aft				

#### **Enhanced Input Validation**

The text input boxes for defining the profile name, entity name, column name, lookup name, and lookup Value name attempt to automatically update the entered text such as space and uppercase letters. The validation shows an error message when typing invalid characters as shown in the image below.

🤨 Column edit	or ? X				
${igsidem}$ "&" is not allowed at this position.					
Column name					
Description Column Description					
User tip Enter text to appear in the form as a t					
Column data type Varying-length Text 💌					
Column properties					
Mandatory					
X Searchable					
Unique					
Column Indexed					
OK Cancel					

Users can also copy paste characters with space and capital letters in the text boxes.

#### Percent Column Type

This is a decimal data type with a minimum of 0 and maximum of 100. The image below shows the Percent column in Column data type drop down menu.

🦸 Column edito	or ? ×			
Column name	share			
Description	Column Description			
User tip	Enter text to appear in the form as a tooltip			
Column data type	Varying-length Text 💌			
	Column properties			
Decimal Number Date Date with time Geometry Yes/No Related Entity Single Select Lookup Administrative Spatial Unit Multiple Select Lookup Percent				

The input widget in the entity editor corresponds to a spin box with a '%' suffix appended to the value as shown in the image below.

#### Auto Generated Code Column Type

This column type can be used to create unique codes such as parcel number, house number, etc. The column type can be found in the **Column data type** drop down menu as shown below.

🧕 Column edit	tor ? X	
Column name Description User tip	Enter column name Column Description Enter text to appear in the form as a t	
Column data type	Varying-length Text Date Date with time Geometry Yes/No Related Entity Single Select Lookup Administrative Spatial Unit Auto Generated Code Multiple Select Lookup Percent OK Cancel	

One can set the column properties such as the source table of the code prefix, code separator and leading zero as shown in the Column Property below.

🧕 Auto Ge	nerated Code Proper	?	×
Prefix source	admin_spatial_unit_set		-
Separator	Hyphen (-)		-
Leading zero	00		-
	ОК	Ca	ncel

The column type generates unique codes automatically based on the selected prefix source as shown in the image below.

NRB-KIL-YAY-0001	× 🕨
------------------	-----

#### **Decimal Number Column Type**

The decimal column type is enhanced with the ability to change the number of decimal places and the precision as highlighted in the image below.

🧕 🛛 Decimal Pi	operties	?	×
Precision	18		<b></b>
Decimal places	6		<b>•</b>
Minimum value	0.000000		
Maximum value	0.000000		
	ОК	Ca	ncel

#### **Multi-Party Entity Types in Social Tenure Relationship**

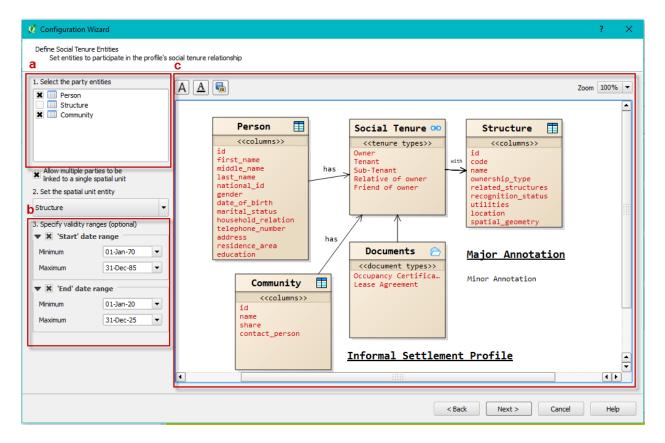
A profile's social tenure relationship can now incorporate one or more party entity types; this is applicable in contexts where the tenure relationship of spatial units is shared by different party entity types such as person or community entities. See the red-colored box labelled 'a' in the image below.

#### **Date Validity Ranges in Social Tenure Relationship**

The respective ranges for start and end dates can optionally be specified when configuring a profile's social tenure relationship. This ensures that the date ranges for new social tenure relationships are validated within these set limits. See the red-colored box labelled 'b' in the image below.

#### **Visual Representation of Social Tenure Relationship**

The basic data model of a profile's social tenure relationship can now be visualized in the configuration wizard as shown in the image below. The model can be annotated with user-defined text and exported as an image file. This is useful in helping to visualize the linkage between the social tenure relationship entities as well as using the image files in reports, presentations etc. See the red-colored box labelled 'c' in the image below.



#### **Social Tenure Relationship Views**

An additional Social Tenure Relationship database view is now created upon configuring a new data profile. This view uses the spatial unit id as its id column. This makes it easy to design and generate documents for profiles that may have a party linked to more than one spatial unit. Consequently, two default database views are created:

- Spatial Unit View contains Spatial Unit records linked to Party records through the Social Tenure Relationship. The view and layer name is denoted by [spatial\_unit\_table\_name]\_vw\_social\_tenure\_relationship
- Party Views (one or more) contain Party records linked to Spatial Unit records and social tenure information. The view is denoted by [party\_table\_name]\_vw\_social\_tenure\_relationship

## **Current Profile Selection**

The process of setting the current data profile has been significantly simplified with the addition of a profile selection combobox in the STDM toolbar as shown in the image below.



#### **Social Tenure Relationship**

#### Social Tenure Relationship (STR) Editor

The Social Tenure Relationship Editor has been completely revamped by utilizing a tree structure and a single page design that makes creating an STR record very quick and easy thereby reducing time in repetitive STR creation workflows.

#### **Local Spatial Unit Preview**

A local map preview has been added on the existing web preview of spatial units as shown in the image below.

🧕 Create Social Tenure Relationship		?	×
Select the spatial unit that could be parcel,	land or building, structure and so on.		
	Add Spatial Unit Preview Spatial Unit		
Social Tenure Relationship 1     Party     Spatial Unit     Tenure Information     Supporting Documents     Validity Period			
	Scale factor: 1.000	÷	
	😨 Local ี 🛄 Web		
	Save	Can	ncel

#### **Multiple Party Entity**

Users can choose more than one party entity to be linked to a spatial unit as shown in the image below. The party entities must be selected in the Configuration Wizard.



#### **Tenure Share**

The Tenure Share option has been added in the Tenure Information section. This feature enables the user to specify the tenure share for the spatial unit as a percentage. The module automatically updates the other party records' tenure share when the share of one party record is manually changed by the user.

Create Social Tenure Relationship										? >
elect the type of relationship that the sp	ecified p	arty has with the se	lec	ted spatial	unit	. Optionally ye	ou can specify th	ne tenure sha	re.	
			_							
		Social Tenure Type	е	Share		First Name	Middle Name	Last Name	National ID	Gender
🖻 👚 Social Tenure Relationship 1	1	Owner	Ŧ	25.00%	÷	Alice	Akeno	Туа	3454364	Female (F)
Party	2	Owner	Ŧ	25.00%	-	Clement	Echoto	Peter	6785678	Male (M)
- 🪠 Tenure Information	3	Owner	Ŧ	25.00%	+	David	Enyaman	Ewoton	7686587	Female (F)
Supporting Documents	4	Owner	Ŧ	25.00%	¢	Peter	L.	Emeri	342214	Female (F)

#### **Tenure Validity Period**

Users can specify the tenure validity period by choosing the start and end dates of the tenure agreement as illustrated in the image below. The tenure duration box enables the user to specify the date ranges by entering number of year or months, this is used to automatically compute the end validity date.

🤨 Create Social Tenure Relationship		?	×
Specify the validity range of dates. The yea	ar and month option is used to quickly set the date ranges.		
Social Tenure Relationship 1     Party     Spatial Unit     Tenure Information     Supporting Documents     Validity Period	Tenure duration 99 • In years In months Validity period from 1/27/2017 • to 1/27/2116 •		

#### **Multiple STR Entry**

Users can add multiple social tenure relationship records without re-opening the editor as illustrated in the image below.

<b>Q</b> Create Social Tenure Relationship							?	×
Select the party by searching through the	existing record.							
						Select a	party entity Pers	on 🔻
<ul> <li>General Social Tenure Relationsh ▲</li> <li>Party</li> <li>Party</li> <li>Spatial Unit</li> </ul>	First Name	Middle Name	Last Name	National ID	Gender	Date Of Birth	Marital Status	Hou
Tenure Information Supporting Documents Validity Period								
Social Tenure Relationsh     Party     Spatial Unit     Tenure Information     Supporting Documents								
Validity Period Social Tenure Relationsh Party Spatial Unit Tenure Information Supporting Documents Validity Period								
Validity Period Social Tenure Relationsh Party Spatial Unit Supporting Documents	(							••
Jalidity Period						Si	ave Ca	incel

## **View Social Tenure Relationship**

Searching of STR records is possible using tenure validity period as shown in the image below. The filter can also be disabled using the checkbox in the Validity Period tab.

🔇 View Social Tenure Relationship		—	×
Search By: Person Structure Validity from 1/27/2017 • to 1/16/2036 • Filter X Validity Period	Spatial Unit Preview		
€     Search     ① Clear Results       Search Results:			

# **Entity Editor**

A **Subform** inside the **Primary** form of STDM is added to enable the user enter records on a different entity that depends on the **Primary Entity**. It also enables the user to edit and delete

records from within the **Subform**. For instance, within a **Household Entity Editor**, you can add a record of **Household Income Entity** as shown in the image below.

ų,	Household	🦸 Household Editor ? 🗙	
ł	2 🛛 🛛	mary Farmer Collection Household income Collection	]
	Household	+ / 0	usehold Vicinit
1	KYG/006		arden
2	KYG/007	Year A Month Income Generating Activity	arden
3	KYG/008		from the Garc
4	KYG/011		Garden
5	KYG/012		arden
6	KYG/013		from the Garc
7	KYG/014		Garden
8	KYG/015		Garden 🝷
•		Look For Type the filte In Column Year	
Lool	k For Type th		mber 🔻
		Save Save and New Cancel	Close

## **Data Import**

#### **Importing Lookup Values**

A lookup value translator has been incorporated to enable easier importation of lookup values as shown in the image below. Previously, one would need to use the related table translator. Using this new option, the only requirement is to specify the matching lookup table in the STDM database and configuration. A user can also specify a default value (from the selected lookup table) which will be used in case the value from the source table is not found.

🦸 Lookup Translat	or Configuration	?	×
Lookup table	in_check_gender		-
Default lookup value			•
	Female Male		
		K Can	cel

#### **Spatial Unit Manager**

#### **GPS Feature Import Tool**

The GPS Feature Import has been completely redesigned into a single window where GPX file source and coordinate points selection is in one tab and attribute-related tabs such as Primary, Supporting Documents, and Collections tab are in separate tabs as shown in the image below.

In addition, the tool enables users to rearrange point positions using drag-and-drop. To make it clear to the user on the impact of the changes, the selection and removal of a point automatically updates the preview map. Moreover, when selecting a row, a user can view which point they have selected as it is also highlighted in the preview layer. A user can also edit the values of each coordinate pair by double-clicking the Longitude and Latitude fields.

G	PS Fe	eature Import			? ×
		Import Prim	ary Supporti	ng Documents	
	_	/STDM 1.4/samp Type: Waypoint		GPX_Data/clementine_loop.gpx	Browse
GP)	K Dat	a Editor			
		Point Name	Longitude	Latitude	Select All
1	×	CLEMEN TR	-121.035340039	38.916370006	Clear All
2	×	CONFL TR	-121.012300031	38.920639999	
3		CULVERT TR	-121.011829974	38.932889983	
4	×	MANZANITA	-121.055939991	38.905900003	
5	×	STAGECOACH	-121.054369977	38.911470029	
				Save	Cancel

#### **Spatial Entity Details**

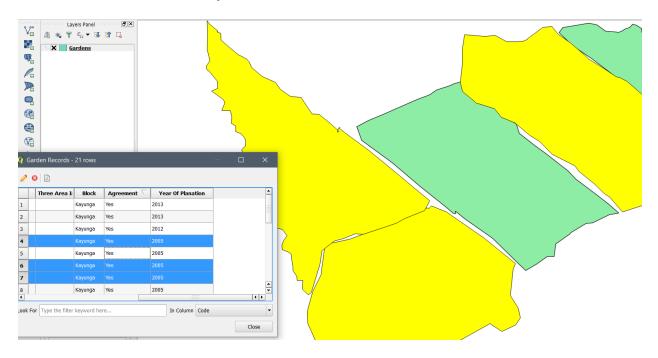
The Spatial Entity Details is a new module that provides a hierarchical view of Spatial Entities and Views by selecting one or more features in the map canvas as shown in the image below. If the vector layer is a Spatial Unit, it also displays the social tenure relationship information similar to the View Social Tenure Relationship module. Editing, deleting and the viewing of supporting documents is possible for relevant entities.

Informal_Settlement 🔻 📰 🥵 🛐 🛃 🎇 🔀	
	socces
	🖻 😂 Structure
	Code: A551
	Name: House 551
	Ownership Type: Private Individual
	Recognition Status: Yes
	Location: Nairobi (NRB)
	🖻 🐂 Social Tenure Relationship
	- Tenure Type: Relative of owner - Validity Start: 01/27/17
	Validity End: 01/27/83
	Tenure Share (%): 100.0
	Person
	First Name: Clement
	Middle Name: Echoto
	Last Name: Peter
	National ID: 6785678
	Gender: Male (M)
	Date Of Birth: 10/28/65
	Marital Status: Married
	Household Relation:
	Telephone Number: 07111111
	- Address: Cotton Street
	Residence Area: Nairobi (NRB)

#### **Spatial Entity Browser**

#### **Multi-Selection of Records and Features**

The Spatial Entity Browser can now select multiple features in the map canvas when multiple records are selected in the Entity Browser table as shown below.



Copyright © 2017 by UN-Habitat. All Rights Reserved

#### **Ability to Control Map While Browsing Records**

The Spatial Entity Browser does not block the clicking of other STDM and QGIS user interface elements. This change enables the user to add a layer, pan the in the map canvas, etc.

#### View Social Tenure Relationship of the Selected Record

Users can see the social tenure relationship details (via the Spatial Entity Details) of a selected record in the Spatial Entity Browser as shown in the image below.

Structure Records - 3 rows - C × Code / Name Ownership Type Related Structures Recognition Status Adds 1 House 33 Private Individual Kitchen Yes Adds 4 Private Individual Kitchen Yes Adds 4 Private Individual Store Yes Adds 51 Private Individual Yes Adds 51 Private Individual Yes Adds 51 Private Individual Yes Adds 51 Private Individual Yes Private Ind						Cole: 4551     Cole: 4551     Cole: 4551     Ownership Type: Private Individual     Recognition Status: Yes     Location: Kinobi (IRR8)     Social Tenure Relationship     Tenure Type: Relative of owner     - Validity Statt: 01/27/17     Validity Statt: 01/27/13
Code       Name       Ownership Type       Related Structures       Recognition Status         A33       House 33       Private Individual       Kitchen       Yes         A4454       House 4454       Private Individual       Kitchen       Yes         A521       House 553       Private Individual       Store       Yes	7 Structure	Records - 3	rows		– 🗆 X	E- 📰 Person
Code/         Name         Ownership Type         Related Structures         Recognition Status           A33         Houss 33         Pirvate Individual         Ktchen         Yes           A454         House 551         Pirvate Individual         Ktchen         Yes           A551         House 551         Pirvate Individual         Store         Yes	/ 🛛 🗎					Middle Name: Echoto
A33     House 33     Private Individual     Kitchen     Yes       A4454     House 4454     Private Individual     Kitchen     Yes       A551     House 551     Private Individual     Store     Yes	Code 🛆	Name	Ownership Type	Related Structures	Recognition Status	
A4454     House 4454     Private Individual     Ktchen     Yes       A551     House 551     Private Individual     Store     Yes	1 A33	House 33	Private Individual	Kitchen	Yes	
Adds     House 454     Private Individual     KtChen     Yes       A551     House 551     Private Individual     Store     Yes	_					
A351 House 551 Private Individual Store Yes Address: Cotton Street Residence Area: Narobi (VRB)	2 A4454	House 4454	Private Individual	Kitchen	Yes	
Kesidence Area: Narodi (NKB)	3 A551	House 551	Private Individual	Store	Yes	
					1	

#### **Documents Designer**

The attribute table composer item used by the Documents Designer has been updated to the latest version of QGIS attribute table item. This upgrade has enabled Item properties panel of the STDM attribute table to add useful option under the Appearance options such as adding empty rows, hiding/showing header, wrapping text, and other customization options as shown below.

Attribute table	20011	n properties	
<ul> <li>Appearance —</li> </ul>			
Show empty ro	ws		
Cell margins	1.00 mm		▲ ▼
Display header	On first fram	e	-
Empty tables	Draw header	s only	•
Message to display			
Background color			
		Advanced customisation	
Wrap text on			
Oversized text	Truncate text	t	-

#### Options

A check box to enable or disable debug mode has been added in the Options module as highlighted in the image below.

🤨 Options			? X		
Set current profile		Informal_Settlement	-		
Database Properties					
Note: Changes to the database connection properties will only take effect upon the next login					
Host	localhost				
Port	5432		Clear		
Database	stdm_ug_rural		Test connection		
Extract from existing connection		•			
Supporting documents folder C:\Users\Wondim\.stdm\Data					
Document Composer	Document Composer				
Template folder C:\Users\Wondim\.	stdm\Reports\Te	mplates			
Output folder C:\Users\Wondim\.stdm\Reports\outputs					
Debug logging Upgrade STDM Configuration to 1.4 Upgrade					
		OK Cance	el Apply		

#### General

#### **Software Packages**

The all-in-one installer for STDM 1.5 is built upon the following packages: PostgreSQL v9.5, PostGIS 2.2 and QGIS 2.18. STDM is also compatible with QGIS 2.14 and 2.16. See the links below for the full list of feature updates.

QGIS 2.16

QGIS 2.18

#### **Enabling PostGIS Extension**

When users create the STDM database manually, there is no need of also creating the PostGIS extension as far as the PostGIS extension is installed for the current PostgreSQL version. This is

because, STDM enables the PostGIS extension automatically, if it is not enabled for the database. This will greatly reduce the error that happens due to missing PostGIS extension in the STDM database.

# **Getting Technical Support**

To access help topics, use the table of contents. Depending on the context of the support services required, you can use the online resource below to get in touch with GLTN's STDM team.

- For more information, please visit <u>www.stdm.gltn.net</u> or subscribe to: <u>lists.osgeo.org/cgi-bin/mailman/listinfo/stdm-user</u>
- To receive important news and updates around STDM in general, subscribe to: <u>lists.osgeo.org/cgi-bin/mailman/listinfo/stdm-announce</u>
- If you experience any issue while working with STDM, please report it so that developers can check and fix it. To report a bug, subscribe to: <u>lists.osgeo.org/cgi-bin/mailman/listinfo/stdm-dev</u> or post it in GitHub at: <u>https://github.com/gltn/stdm-plugin/issues</u>

To browse the source codes or extend the core platform, access the repository here: <a href="https://github.com/gltn/stdm-plugin">https://github.com/gltn/stdm-plugin</a>

**Note**: While asking an STDM related question via the mailing lists, kindly provide the following information.

- A descriptive title for your email
- The computer's operating system and version
- The exact STDM version used at that moment
- The process taking place when the system broke down, e.g. new installation, re-installation, system update, etc.
- The exact error that has occurred. If possible, attach a screenshot or copy of the error text along with the email.

# **System Requirements**

#### **Operating system Requirements**

#### Windows:

A Windows 7 Service Pack 1

Copyright © 2017 by UN-Habitat. All Rights Reserved

- B Windows 8
- C Windows 8.1
- D Windows 10

#### Linux Based:

- E Debian
- F Ubuntu
- G Fedora
- H Red Hat
- I openSUSE

#### **Hardware Requirements**

- 2 At least 2GB of RAM
- 3 At least 2GB free disk space
- 4 1024x768 screen resolution or higher

# **Installing STDM**

# **Before Installing**

# What do I need to install to have a fully functional STDM?

In the provided installation package, there are core components of software packages that are mandatory for an installation of STDM to work properly.

The following need to be installed:

- GIS (current version 2.18)
- PostgreSQL (current version 9.5)
- PostGIS (current version 2.2)
- Sample data this is optional if you want to have a sample data to manipulate and test features of STDM.

# Do I need to uninstall previous installation of the above software?

This is not necessary if you are working with QGIS 2.14 or higher and PostgreSQL 9.5 or higher. If you have lower versions, we cannot guarantee the full functionality of STDM. However, in such a case, you need to do the following:

1. Start QGIS normally and wait for it to load

2. Download the latest version of STDM plugin from GitHub: <u>https://github.com/gltn/stdm</u> by adding STDM download repository in the QGIS Plugin manager. See instructions <u>here (Download From repository)</u>

4. Using PostgreSQL database Administrator i.e **pgAdmin** (<sup>(1)</sup>), create a new database called **stdm**.

5. Install PostGIS extension created for the PostgreSQL version you are using. You can download it from <u>http://postgis.net/install/</u>.

6. On the QGIS window, check if STDM is enabled on the menu and toolbar

# **Using Bundled STDM Installer**

The bundled installer is the custom installer that is built to help you easily install STDM and dependent software packages.

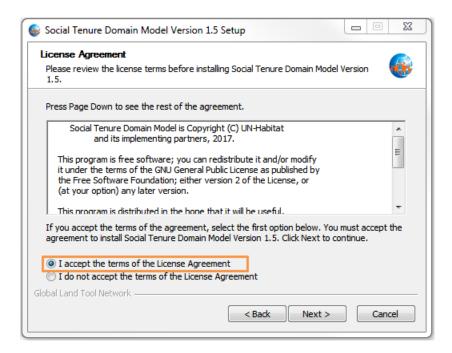
**Note**: For **32bit** machine please select and run **STDM-1.5-Final-x86\_4.exe** setup file. For **64bit** machines run **STDM-1.5-Final-x64\_4.exe** setup file.

#### **Installation steps**

**1.** Run the installer by double clicking on the setup file as shown below and select **Next**.



**2.** Read the license agreement. Once you accept the terms and conditions, select '**I accept the terms...**' option and click **Next** to proceed.



3. Choose the components you would like to install. The following are the available components.

A **QGIS Las Palmas for STDM** – This will install QGIS with STDM plugin embedded.

B **PostgreSQL 9.5** – This will install PostgreSQL database server. If you do not have PostgreSQL, make sure you select this option. STDM will not work without it.

C **PostGIS 2.2** – This installs the GIS plugin for PostgreSQL. Please ensure you select it for installation if you do not have already installed it in your machine.

D **Sample data** – This will install sample files for STDM plugin. This is not a mandatory option but new users are recommended to install to help them jump start with STDM practice.

**Note**: If you already have PostgreSQL or PostGIS installed, the installer will skip installation of those components.

After your selection, click **Next** to start the installation as shown in the image below.

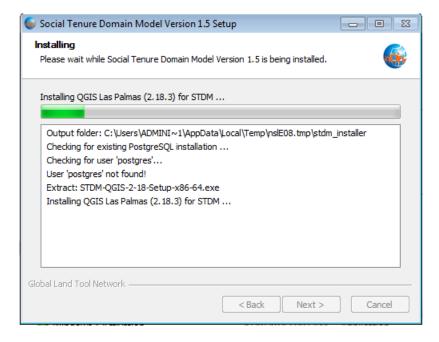
🔞 Social Tenure Domain Mode	l Version 1.5 Setup		
Choose Components Choose which features of Social Tenure Domain Model Version 1.5 you want to install.			
Check the components you wa install. Click Next to continue.	nt to install and uncheck the comp	onents you don't want to	
Select components to install:	<ul> <li>✓ QGIS Las Palmas (2.18.3)</li> <li>✓ PostgreSQL 9.5</li> <li>✓ PostGIS 2.2.2</li> <li>✓ Sample Data</li> </ul>	Description Position your mouse over a component to see its description,	
Space required: 2.0GB	4 III >		
Global Land Tool Network ———	< <u>B</u> ack	Next > Cancel	

#### 4. Database connection properties.

🚳 Social Tenure Domain Mod	del Version 1.5 Setup
Database Connection Prop	perties 🥋
Please specify the database of PostGIS.	connection properties for installing PostgreSQL and
Database Connection Prope	rties:
User Name:	postgres
Password:	•••••
Re-enter Password:	•••••
Port:	5433
Database Name:	stdm
Please take note of t on using it for the firs	hese values as they will be required for configuring STDM st time.
Global Land Tool Network	
	< Back Install Cancel

The database connection property window allows you to set the username and password to use with STDM as shown in the image above. Leave the default port to 5433. This is where PostgreSQL server will be listening for database connections. For more details on PostgreSQL connections setup please see documentation in <a href="https://www.postgresql.org/docs/9.5/static/runtime-config-connection.html">https://www.postgresql.org/docs/9.5/static/runtime-config-connection.html</a>.

5. This is the actual component installation as shown in the image below. **QGIS, STDM, PostgreSQL, PostGIS** and all other dependencies will be installed in their respective folders. Depending on the speed of your machine, this process might take at most 15 minutes.



7. After successful installation, please close the installer by clicking on the **Finish** button as shown in the image below. Run QGIS for STDM from the icon created on your computer desktop.

😡 Social Tenure Domain Mode	el Version 1.5 Setup		
	Completing Social Tenure Domain Model Version 1.5 Setup Social Tenure Domain Model Version 1.5 has been installed on your computer.		
Social Tenure Domain Model A Plugin for QGIS	Click Finish to close Setup.		
FACILITATED BY			
	< Back Finish Cancel		

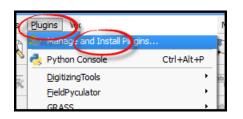
## **Installing from GLTN Plugin Repository**

For users with an already existing installation of QGIS version 2.14 or higher and who do not want to uninstall the current version, we recommend that you download STDM plugin from the repository using the following steps.

• Start QGIS normally and wait for it to load

Copyright © 2017 by UN-Habitat. All Rights Reserved

• Go to menu Plugins -> Manage and Install Plugins ...



- Wait for the plugin to fetch available plugins from the web repository (only if online)
- On the **Plugins** dialog select **Settings** tab



Available repositories will be shown under "Plugin repositories"

Status	Name	URL
connected	QGIS Official Plugin Repository	http://plugins.qgis.org/plugins/plugins.xml?qgis=2.8

• Click on the Add button ( Add... ) to open repository details dialog. The dialog allows you to enter additional repository properties,

To add STDM plugin repository, please enter the details as follows;

- 1. In the Name field enter: GLTN Plugin Repository
- 2. In the URL field enter: http://stdm.gltn.net/plugin/plugins.xml
- 3. Ensure the **Enabled** option is checked then select **OK** to close.

<b>Ø</b>	Repository details	? ×
Name	GLTN Plugin Repository	
URL	http://stdm.gltn.net/plugin/plugins.xml	

- Click on the OK button to dismiss the dialog.
- The dialog will try accessing the added repository (if online), and pull the linked plugins. If successful, the repository will be added to the list.

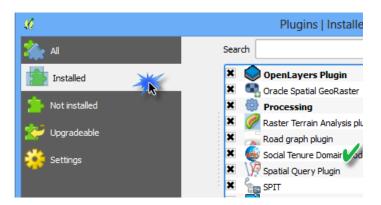
Copyright © 2017 by UN-Habitat. All Rights Reserved

F	Plugin repositories			
	Stat	tus	Name	URL
ľ	_			http://stdm.gltn.net/plugin/plugins.xml?qgis=2.8 http://plugins.qgis.org/plugins/plugins.xml?qgis=2.8

• While still on the Plugins window select the **Not installed** tab, look for STDM plugin on the list of `Not installed` plugins. Select it and click Install plugin.

⋩ м	Search
installed	SimpleReports
and the second s	SimpleSvg
Not installed	SimpliPy
10 m	SLD4raster
Upgradeable	📄 🍃 Sicer
🔅 Settings	🔒 sm
C. C	smartroadsense
	Social Tenure Domain Model
	SolTexture
	SOS Client

• QGIS will download and install STDM plugin. The plugin should now be available on the **Installed tab** and also on the QGIS main panel.



• Click close to dismiss the dialog.

You are now ready to start using STDM. On the QGIS Toolbar, you will see the image below.



# **Migration from Previous Version**

Migration from the previous versions of STDM is seamless. The migration will not affect your data. The migration process is handled by the Upgrade Module of STDM. The module executes automatically when you login to STDM 1.5 for the first time after upgrading from STDM version 1.0 and above. You can also run it manually to upgrade upto STDM 1.4 configuration by clicking on the Upgrade button in the options Menu. Then, the configuration will be updated automatically to STDM 1.5 configuration.

When upgrading from STDM 1.0/ 1.1 to STDM 1.5 configuration, the following will take place.

- 1. A new **configuration.stc** will be created based on **stdmConfig.xml** inside the **.stdm** folder under the user directory.
- 2. Your existing configuration file, **stdmConfig.xm**l will **not** be removed.
- 3. A new profile will be created based on the old configuration profile name.
- 4. New tables will be created based on the old table names with a prefix of the first two words of the profile name.
- 5. The existing tables and data will **not** be deleted.
- 6. All the new tables will be populated with data that was stored in the old tables to allow you access your data in the new version.
- 7. Update your templates by replacing the old tables, views, and directories with the new tables, new views, and directories.
- Custom views will be re-created with the same name with 'new\_' prefix.
- Always use views with **new** prefix for custom views.
- The default **social\_tenure\_relations** view will be [entity\_table\_name]\_vw\_social\_tenure\_relationship view. There will be a separate view for Parties, and Spatial Unit Entities.
- The views will not be deleted but you should not use them to create new templates as they will not be updated henceforth. Use the new views.
- 8. If you upgrade manually while having a newly created configuration through the configuration wizard or the default configuration template, it will be re-named with a format configuration\_year\_month\_date\_hour\_minute.stc format. E.g. configuration\_2016\_08\_24\_02\_03.stc. The extension **stc** might not be visible based on your Operating System file extension display setting.

When upgrading from STDM 1.4 to STDM 1.5, the following will take place.

- 1. New **Social Tenure Relationship Entity** columns will be added, namely tenure share, validity start, validity end.
- 2. The existing party\_id column in the **Social Tenure Relationship Entity** will be replaced by the name of the entity followed by '\_id'.

#### **Automatic Upgrade**

The automatic upgrade happens when you login to STDM for the first time after upgrading to STDM 1.5.

To upgrade automatically, follow the steps below.

1. You will be asked to agree on the terms and conditions of STDM. This might not be shown if you are migrating from STDM 1.4.

In case you have uninstalled QGIS with its registry using third party uninstallers, STDM might lose all the directory settings.

In such a case, you will see the **Directory Settings** dialog requiring you to select the supporting document, template and output folders. At the top, the **Directory Settings** dialog explains for what purpose STDM uses those directories to help you remember the folders. Click on the folder browse

button (<sup>[]</sup>) to select the required folders (see the image below).

🤨 Directory Settings		?	×
Please, select the template ar The supporting documents fol The template folder is the fold	STDM folder setting in the system ad supporting document folders h der is the folder that contains th der that contains your document where you save the generated	oelow. e 2020 fold templates.	
Supporting documents folder			
Template folder			
Output folder			
		Ap	ply

**Note:** Closing the Directory Settings dialog without selecting and applying the settings will lead to the cancellation of the migration process. This will lead to the temporary loss of access to the existing profile, data, and templates.

If you do not see the dialog, it means, your directory setting is not removed from your system.

The upgrading of the configuration takes place.

You will see a progress dialog that looks like the following image.

Ensure you do not interrupt the upgrade process as the process involves your data. To reduce the risk of interruption, the progress bar cannot be closed by clicking on the close button; this also prevents QGIS from being closed.

Once the process is complete, you will see a popup requesting you to view changes and new features of STDM (see the image below).

🤨 Upgrade Information		×
Would you like to view the new	v features and changes	of STDM 1.5.0 ?
	Yes	No

It is recommended to view it. Click the **OK** button to view the changes and new features or click on the **No** button if you do not wish to see the changes.

인 Upg	rade STDM Configuration	×
0	Your configuration has been successfully	upgraded!
	ОК	

You will now be able to see your profile with the default profiles of STDM.

You can explore these profiles and on the way learn the capabilities of STDM 1.5 configuration. If you don't need them, you can delete them as discussed in <u>Deleting Profiles topic</u>.

You can also customize the profiles by changing their entities, columns, etc using Copy Profile and Save as Draft features in the Configuration Wizard.

In case of a failed upgrade, you can upgrade using the <u>Manual Upgrade</u> option.

**Note**: Once you make a successful upgrade, you will no longer be able to revert back to an old configuration. The Upgrade button will be disabled.

## **Manual Upgrade**

If the automatic upgrade failed, you can still make the upgrade from the Options Module to upgrade from STDM 1.0 or 1.1 to STDM 1.4. After upgrading to STDM 1.4, the configuration will be automatically updated to STDM 1.5.

1. Open the Options module by looking for **Options** under Admin Settings menu located in STDM Toolbar or STDM menu.

Click on **Options** menu as shown in the image below.



2. Once the **Options** module opens, go to the bottom of the module and locate **Upgrade STDM Configuration to 1.4** with the **Upgrade** button as highlighted below.

Options				? 2
et current profile			Rural_Agriculture	•
Database Prop	erties			
Note: Changes	to the <mark>database conn</mark>	ection propertie	es will only take effect	upon the next login
Host		localhost		
Port		5432		Clear
Database		stdm		Test connection
Extract from	existing connection		,	•
upporting docum	ents folder		C:\Users\Wondim\.	stdm\Data
Document Com	iposer			
Template folder	C:\Users\Wondim\.	stdm\Reports\Te	emplates	
Output folder	C:\Users\Wondim\.	stdm\Reports\o	utputs	
pgrade STDM Co	nfiguration to 1.4	Upgrade	]	
			ОК Са	ancel Apply

Copyright © 2017 by UN-Habitat. All Rights Reserved

3. Click on the **Upgrade** button.

In case you have uninstalled QGIS with its registry using third party uninstallers, you risk losing all the directory settings on STDM.

In such a case, you will see a dialog box requiring you to select the supporting document, template and output folders. Click on the folder browse button () to select all the required folders (see the image below).

🤨 Directory Settings		?	×
Please, select the template ar The supporting documents fol The template folder is the fold	STDM folder setting in the syste ad supporting document folders der is the folder that contains the der that contains your document where you save the generated	below. he 2020 fold t templates.	
Supporting documents folder			
Template folder			
Output folder			
		Ар	ply

**Note:** Closing the Directory Settings dialog without selecting and applying the settings will lead to the cancellation of the migration process. This will lead to the temporary loss of access to the existing profile, data, and templates.

If you do not see the dialog, it means your directory setting is not removed from your system.

This leads to the starting of the upgrade process. You will see a progress dialog as shown below.

🤨 Upgrading STDM Configuration	?	×
Appending the upgraded profile		
0%		

Please ensure that you do not interrupt the upgrade process involves your data. To reduce the risk of interruption, the progress bar cannot be closed by clicking on the close button; this also prevents QGIS from being closed.

Once the process is complete, the progress bar disappears and you can start to use STDM.

**Note**: Once you make a successful upgrade, you will no longer be able to upgrade an old configuration.

# **Failed STDM Installation**

STDM Installation could fail due to various reasons such as infected Computer, incomplete uninstallation of the old version, etc. For solutions, check the following sub-topics.

## **Failure to Install after Uninstalling Previous Versions**

The failure could happen when the previous version is not properly removed. Follow the steps below to remove the previous version.

1. Backup the STDM database located in **PostgreSQL server**. If you fail to back up your database, **do not** uninstall the PostgreSQL.

2. Go to Start Menu or Start Screen and type **programs and features.** Launch **Programs and Features** tool and uninstall the following;

- PostgreSQL 9.4 or older versions if you have backed up your database or do not need your existing database.
- QGIS Wien (2.8.3) for STDM or older versions
- PostGIS 2.1.7 or older versions if you have backed up your database or if you do not need your existing database.

2. After the above software packages are uninstalled, go to **C:/Program Files** and delete the following directories in case they still exist.

- QGIS Wien (2.8.3) for STDM
- PostgreSQL if you have backed up your database or do not need your existing database and uninstalled PostgreSQL

3. If you have backed up your database or do not need your existing database and uninstalled PostgreSQL, remove the **postgres** user.

To remove the **postgres** user, go to **Start Menu** or **Start Screen** and type **cmd**, on **Command Prompt**. Right click on it and **Run as Administrator**.

On the command prompt window type the command below and press the **Enter** key on your keyboard.

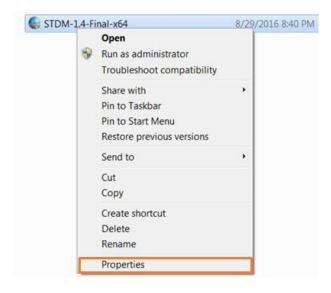
### net user postgres /delete

## **Failure to Install on Windows 7**

This happens when you try to install STDM Bundled Installer on Windows 7 without Service Pack 1. The installer suggests to upgrade to Service Pack 1.

To install STDM in compatibility mode, follow the steps below.

1. **Right-click** on the installer and click on **Properties** item in the **Context** menu (see the image below).



2. Click on **Compatibility** tab as shown in the image below.

If you have problems with this program and it worked correctly on an earlier version of Windows, select the compatibility mode that matches that earlier version. Help me choose the settings Compatibility mode Run this program in compatibility mode for: Windows XP (Service Pack 3) Settings Run in 256 colors Run in 640 x 480 screen resolution Disable visual themes Disable display scaling on high DPI settings Privilege Level Run this program as an administrator Change settings for all users	General	compatibility Security Details Previous Versions
Compatibility mode Run this program in compatibility mode for: Windows XP (Service Pack 3) Settings Run in 256 colors Run in 640 x 480 screen resolution Disable visual themes Disable visual themes Disable desktop composition Disable display scaling on high DPI settings Privilege Level Run this program as an administrator	earlier ve that earlie	rsion of Windows, select the compatibility mode that matches r version.
<ul> <li>Run this program in compatibility mode for:</li> <li>Windows XP (Service Pack 3)</li> <li>Settings</li> <li>Run in 256 colors</li> <li>Run in 640 x 480 screen resolution</li> <li>Disable visual themes</li> <li>Disable visual themes</li> <li>Disable desktop composition</li> <li>Disable display scaling on high DPI settings</li> </ul> Privilege Level <ul> <li>Run this program as an administrator</li> </ul>		
Windows XP (Service Pack 3)  Settings  Run in 256 colors Run in 640 x 480 screen resolution Disable visual themes Disable desktop composition Disable desktop composition Privilege Level Run this program as an administrator		State - The Alexandra
<ul> <li>Run in 256 colors</li> <li>Run in 640 x 480 screen resolution</li> <li>Disable visual themes</li> <li>Disable desktop composition</li> <li>Disable display scaling on high DPI settings</li> </ul> Privilege Level <ul> <li>Run this program as an administrator</li> </ul>	10000000	
<ul> <li>Run in 256 colors</li> <li>Run in 640 x 480 screen resolution</li> <li>Disable visual themes</li> <li>Disable desktop composition</li> <li>Disable display scaling on high DPI settings</li> </ul> Privilege Level <ul> <li>Run this program as an administrator</li> </ul>	Settings	
<ul> <li>Disable visual themes</li> <li>Disable desktop composition</li> <li>Disable display scaling on high DPI settings</li> <li>Privilege Level</li> <li>Run this program as an administrator</li> </ul>		
Disable desktop composition     Disable display scaling on high DPI settings  Privilege Level     Run this program as an administrator	R	n in 640 x 480 screen resolution
Disable display scaling on high DPI settings Privilege Level Run this program as an administrator	🔲 Di	sable visual themes
Privilege Level	🔲 Di	sable desktop composition
Run this program as an administrator	🔲 Di	sable display scaling on high DPI settings
	Privileg	e Level
Change settings for all users	R	n this program as an administrator
	C 😚 C	hange settings for all users
OK Cancel Apply	7	

3. Inside the **Compatibility mode** box, check on the checkbox, **Run this program in compatibility mod for:** and select **Windows 7** as shown below.

you have problems with this program and it worked correctly on an artific version of Windows, select the compatibility mode that matches at earlier version.          telp me choose the settings         Compatibility mode         Image: Compatibility mode         Ima
Compatibility mode  Run this program in compatibility mode for:  Windows 7  Settings  Run in 256 colors  Run in 640 x 480 screen resolution  Disable visual themes  Disable desktop composition  Disable display scaling on high DPI settings
Windows 7         Settings         Run in 256 colors         Run in 640 x 480 screen resolution         Disable visual themes         Disable desktop composition         Disable display scaling on high DPI settings
Settings Run in 256 colors Run in 640 x 480 screen resolution Disable visual themes Disable desktop composition Disable display scaling on high DPI settings
<ul> <li>Run in 256 colors</li> <li>Run in 640 x 480 screen resolution</li> <li>Disable visual themes</li> <li>Disable desktop composition</li> <li>Disable display scaling on high DPI settings</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>Run in 256 colors</li> <li>Run in 640 x 480 screen resolution</li> <li>Disable visual themes</li> <li>Disable desktop composition</li> <li>Disable display scaling on high DPI settings</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>Run in 640 x 480 screen resolution</li> <li>Disable visual themes</li> <li>Disable desktop composition</li> <li>Disable display scaling on high DPI settings</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>Disable visual themes</li> <li>Disable desktop composition</li> <li>Disable display scaling on high DPI settings</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>Disable desktop composition</li> <li>Disable display scaling on high DPI settings</li> </ul>
Disable display scaling on high DPI settings
5. MM (1.5
Privilege Level
Run this program as an administrator
😌 Change settings for all users
OK Cancel Apply

4. Locate the buttons at the bottom. Click on the **Apply** button and then click on the **OK** button.

5. Double click on the STDM bundled Installer to start the installation. It should now start installing normally as discussed in the topic, <u>Using Bundled STDM Installer</u>.

## **Failure to Install on Windows Server**

The failure could happen because of Windows Server password complexity requirement specified <u>here</u>.

Thus, to solve this issue from happening, when setting **postgres** user password, follow the requirements below, which is specified by Microsoft.

1. Passwords must not contain the user's entire **samAccountName** (Account Name) value or entire **displayName** (Full Name) value. Both checks are not case sensitive:

- The **samAccountName** is checked in its entirety only to determine whether it is part of the password. If the **samAccountName** is less than three characters long, this check is skipped.
- The displayName is parsed for delimiters: commas, periods, dashes or hyphens, underscores, spaces, pound signs, and tabs. If any of these delimiters are found, the displayName is split and all parsed sections (tokens) are confirmed not to be included in the password. Tokens that are less than three characters in length are ignored, and substrings of the tokens are not checked. For example, the name "Erin M. Hagens" is split

Copyright © 2017 by UN-Habitat. All Rights Reserved

into three tokens: "Erin," "M," and "Hagens." Because the second token is only one character long, it is ignored. Therefore, this user could not have a password that included either "erin" or "hagens" as a substring anywhere in the password.

- 2. Passwords must contain characters from three of the following five categories:
  - Uppercase characters of European languages (A through Z, with diacritic marks, Greek and Cyrillic characters)
  - Lowercase characters of European languages (a through z, sharp-s, with diacritic marks, Greek and Cyrillic characters)
  - Base 10 digits (0 through 9)
  - Non-alpha-numeric characters:  $\sim!@#$ \$%^&\*\_-+=`|\(){{[]:;"'<>,.?/
  - Any Unicode character that is categorized as an alphabetic character but is not uppercase or lowercase. This includes Unicode characters from Asian languages.

# **Getting Started with STDM**

# **User Interface**

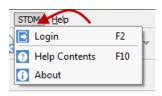
The user Interface for STDM is embedded within QGIS Main Window. To access STDM, QGIS Main window must be opened first.

STDM appears as follows in the QGIS Main Window.



### **Default view**

1. STDM menu has few menu items or buttons when you are not logged in. When you click on the menu from the QGIS Menu bar, the following menu items appear as shown in the image below.



You can also see the STDM toolbar inside QGIS Toolbars area as shown below.

## 

**Login** - Prompts you to connect to the database and access full STDM items. A username and password is required to connect.

(?) Help Contents - Provides access to STDM user manual.

**(i)** About - Displays summary information about STDM and the currently installed STDM version.

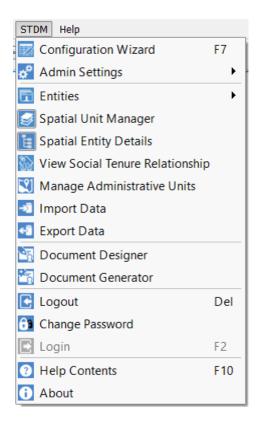
### **Full view**

Login credentials are required to access full menu items especially if you are the administrator.

Copyright © 2017 by UN-Habitat. All Rights Reserved

#### **STDM Menu Items**

The image below shows the different STDM menu items.



### **STDM Toolbar Buttons**

Informal_Settlement 💌 😿 🕄 🗔 🛃 😫 💱 🛉	
-------------------------------------	--

Informal\_Settlement -

**Current Profile Selection Drop Down** - The drop down menu enables you to change the current profile of STDM.

**Configuration Wizard** - Brings up the configuration wizard that allows you to set paths used by STDM and create and customize profiles with entities, columns, lookups and values. It also enables you to define Social Tenure Relationship, which can be later used to add related data. To launch the Configuration Wizard, you can also use the keyboard shortcut - F7.

**Admin Settings: Content Authorization** - allows you to grant access such as Create, View, Edit, Delete to other STDM functions.

Admin Settings: Manage Users-Roles - Brings up a dialog for you to create users and roles for accessing various STDM functionalities.

**Admin Settings: Options** - Brings up a dialog that enables you to change the current/active profile, modify database properties, modify STDM folders, and upgrade STDM configuration manually.

**Entities Menu** - The entities menu is composed of entity tables with buttons of add, edit, and delete. You can add a new record using the add button and select and edit data using the form. It also enables you to access the New Social Tenure Relationship wizard to define the relationship between party and a spatial unit.

Spatial Unit Manager - Activates or deactivates the docked STDM spatial unit manager

**E**Spatial Entity Details - Initializes the Spatial Entity Details that enables you to select a feature on the Map Canvas and view the details of the record and Social Tenure Relationship information if applicable.

**View Social Tenure Relationship** - Opens a window that allows you to define and view defined social tenure relations in the database.

Manage Administrative Units - Brings up the dialog that enables you to define geographic zones and administrative areas as per the project scope.

Access to these administrative areas is provided in the forms using foreign keys definitions.

**Import Data** - The wizard allows you to import maps or attribute data into specific module/ table in STDM database.

Export Data - The wizard allows you to export data from STDM database into several output formats.

**Document Designer** - Brings up the QGIS Composer window with STDM toolbar items to allow you create document templates to be used when generating reporting and certificate formats.

**Document Generator** - Provides a dialog that allows you to generate report specific module reports from the designed templates.

**Logout** - Closes the current session and returns you to minimal view.

**Change Password** - Enables you to change the password of the current user in the current session.

# Logging into STDM

Note: Make sure QGIS is started and running while STDM is visible in QGIS interface tool bar.

To start QGIS, look for this Icon  $\checkmark$  and double click to run it. If you are using the custom build, downloaded from STDM website, click on the QGIS Desktop icon  $\checkmark$  to start.

**1.** Click the login menu located under the STDM Menu or the login button located under the STDM toolbar, as highlighted below.

### Login menu:



### Login button:



A login dialog will pop up. You are required to provide login credentials using the default user (postgres) created during installation of the software.

📢 STDM	Login	? X
Username	postgres	
Password	1	
	Login	Cancel

a. **<u>Username</u>**: The *default username is postgres without quotes.* An administrator can create user accounts for new users.

b. <u>**Password**</u>: Provide the password used when installing STDM using the Bundled Installer or the one created by the system administrator.

If you have installed the required software separately, use the password that you used to login to PostgreSQL database server.

**Note**: If you are intending to use STDM in a network environment, request the system administrator for username and passwords.

😲 STDM	Login	?	×
Username	postgres		
Password	•••••		
	Login	Can	cel

2. Then, click on Login button or hit the Enter button on the keyboard.

The cancel button closes the login dialog and stops the login process.

**3**.When successfully logged in, you will see the full STDM toolbar as shown below.

Informal_Settlement 💌 😿 💽	🥃 🗄 🎡 💟 🔊	🛋 🗟 🛃 💽 🔂 💽 🕢 🔂
---------------------------	-----------	-----------------

## Logging into a Different Database and Server

In addition to logging in to the default STDM database as shown above, you can always change the database settings to login to a different database. This is also possible in the Options module after login as discussed in <u>the Options topic</u>.

To change database properties, follow the steps below.

1. Click on the database icon located in the login dialog as highlighted below.

🧕 STDM	Login	?	×
Username	postgres		
Password			
R	Login	Can	cel

2. A PostgreSQL Database Connection dialog pops up as shown below.

llast	localhost
Host	localitost
Port	5432
Database	stdm
	Save Cance

The PostgreSQL Database Connection loads with the currently used properties.

a. **Host** refers to the location of a computer that has hosted the database server (PostgreSQL). If the database server is installed in your own computer, you have to enter **localhost** as shown above. However, when PostereSQL that holds the database is installed in an office network, the IP address will be different from localhost. It could be a number like 192.168.0.23 or any other number with such format as specified by the system administrator. This is relevant when STDM is installed for governmental or non-governmental organizations with a centralized database server.

b. **Port** refers to an endpoint of communication for the database server (postgreSQL). To access the database from STDM, we need to know its port. The most common port values for PostgreSQL are **5432**, **5433**, or any other port as specified during installation.

c. **Database** refers to a storage location in which the entire data of STDM is stored. By default, during installation, it is set as **stdm**. You can enter any other database that you want to connect to after installation using PostgreSQL administration software called pgAdmin III. If you want to use your own database, make sure the PostGIS extension is installed and added to the database that STDM uses. Otherwise, STDM cannot run.

3. After making changes to the database properties, click on the **Save** button.

If you do not want your changes to be saved, press the Cancel button. Clicking on both buttons results in the closing of the dialog.

4. You can now login to the new database that you have specified.

## **First Time Login**

When you login to STDM for the first time you will see the following.

1. A request to agree with STDM Terms and Conditions.

2. A request to run <u>the Configuration Wizard</u> with a dialog shown below.



The Configuration Wizard enables you to set STDM used folders, create profiles, create database tables for entities, columns, lookup tables, and Social Tenure Relationship that are required by most STDM modules. The Configuration Wizard is discussed under Creating and Customizing STDM Profiles topic starting with <u>Getting Started with the Configuration Wizard topic</u>.

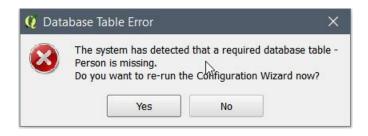
You can also use the default profiles of STDM. In this case, you just need to click on the **Next** button of the Configuration Wizard until you reach the last page of the wizard. Then click on the Finish button to create the database tables and save the settings.

It is recommended to click on the **Yes** button that will start the Configuration Wizard.

If you choose not to run the Configuration Wizard by clicking on the **No** button, you cannot access most of the modules as they rely on the database tables in STDM.

**Note:** This is not applicable for users migrating from older versions of STDM.

3. If you have no database table for a module you are trying to open, a Database Table Error that looks like the one below is shown. The missing table specified depends on the module you are trying to launch.



To fix this, you can click on the **Yes** button to start the Configuration Wizard.

# Logging out of STDM

To log out of the QGIS wizard, you must be logged in. Click the logout button . This immediately logs you out of the STDM system and the STDM command buttons disappears.

From here the log in button will be available for a later login.

Copyright © 2017 by UN-Habitat. All Rights Reserved

Copyright © 2017 by UN-Habitat. All Rights Reserved

# Working with Sample Data

The sample data is provided during the STDM installation. It is saved in **C:/Users/your-user/.stdm/SampleData** folder. Replace **your-user** with the currently logged in PC User. The sample data is used for examples in this documentation.

This sample data contains several forms of data;

1. Georeferenced map data (basemap/Raster data)

2. Persons data in \*csv format (in excel sheets).

3. Shapefiles (Vector data)

4. GPX files (GPS points data)

To use the sample data, make sure QGIS is started and running while STDM is visible in QGIS interface tool bar.

Copyright © 2017 by UN-Habitat. All Rights Reserved

## **Resetting 'postgres' Password in Local Server**

**Note:** This will only work if the user has access to the localhost machine. The password cannot be reset for a remote server running PostgreSQL.

**Synopsis:** The steps below will temporarily disable password authentication which will then enable you to set a new password before finally re-enabling password authentication.

1. Browse to the location of the PostgreSQL installation i.e. C:\Program

**Files\PostgreSQL\9.x\data** and locate the file named **pg\_hba.conf**. Open this file using any text editor such as Notepad or preferably, Notepad ++ (click <u>here</u> to download). If you are using Notepad, make sure you have chosen **All Files** in the file type selection as shown below:

						10-11 Day 10
ganize • New folder						三• 🖬 🕯
Favorites	Name *	Date modified	Type	Size		
E Desktop	🎍 base	09/04/2015 2:37 PM	File folder			
Downloads	👃 global	05/04/2016 8:27 AM	File folder			
1 Recent Places	🔒 pg_dog	19/12/2014 8:40 AM	File folder			
CheDrive	20,00	11/05/2016 12:00 AM	File folder			
▼ Dropoox	bg_multixact	19/12/2014 8:40 AM	File folder			
Libraries	bg_notify	05/04/2016 8:27 AM	File folder			
Documents	📕 pg_serial	19/12/2014 8:40 AM	File folder			
J Music	pg_snapshots	19/12/2014 8:40 AM	File folder			
Pictures	📕 pg_stat	04/04/2016 5:18 PM	File folder			
Podcasts	bg_stat_tmp	11/05/2016 3:27 PM	File folder			
Videos	pg_subtrans	19/12/2014 8:40 AM	File folder			
Computer	pg_tblspc	19/12/2014 8:40 AM	File folder			
System (C:)	🗼 pg_twophase	19/12/2014 8:40 AM	File folder			
👝 Data (D:)	pg_xlog	24/02/2015 10:06 AM	File folder			
Drive H (H:)	pg_hba.conf	19/12/2014 8:40 AM	CONF File	5 KB		
😪 dosapps (1:) 📃	Dan ideat conf	10/13/2014 0.40 884	me ch			
File na	ime:				All Files (*.*)	

2. Once the file is open, scroll to the bottom of the file and locate the following lines:

# TYPE DATABASE		BASE	USER ADDRESS		RESS	METHOD					
# IPv4 local connections:											
host	all	all	127.0.0.1/	'32	md5						
# IPv6 local connections:											
host	all	all	::1/128		md5						

3. Change the *md5* text (as highlighted in red above) to *trust*. The updated text should now look like as shown below. Save changes in the file.

# TYPE DATABASE			USER	ADD	RESS	METHOD					
# IPv4											
host	all	all	127.0.0.1/	/32	trust						
# IPv6 local connections:											
host	all	all	::1/128		trust						

4. In order for the new changes to take effect, the PostgreSQL Windows service needs to be restarted. To load the window showing all services running in the computer, click **Start** then

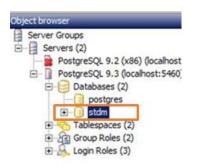
type 'services' in the search textbox. In the resulting list of matching items, click Services as shown below:

Programs (5)
Component Services
Obtfuscator Software Services
Q Services
services.exe
SWCF RIA Services V1.0 SP1 Walkthrough
Files (81)
DpenLayers.js
Washington_2016. Enemark. PPT. ID_213ppt
DrcLaren_367-NEW.pptx
WBL%26P_ConferenceGIS_Technologies_for_Mapping_Land_a
2016_03_16_Presentation_416_Lemmen_et_al.ppt
Dr. McLaren_367.docx
WB_Conference2016_TopDown%26BottomUpApproachesMeet_02262
Community_sourced_land_information_influencing_national_upgrading
Deinzen-Dick-714-714_ppt.pptx
Search the Internet
services Shut down
Afstart 🥝 🚞 💽 🚱 🥖 🔵 📀

- In the Services window, locate the PostgreSQL service which is usually named postgresqlx64-9.x- PostgreSQL Server 9.x. Right click and select Restart so that the new changes can be applied.
- 6. Click Start > PostgreSQL 9.x > pgAdmin III to start the PostgreSQL database manager. Double click on the node, named *PostgreSQL 9.x (localhost:54xx)*, under *Servers* group; a password window will appear. Since we have disabled the need for a password, click on the **OK** button and the **postgres** account will be logged in as shown in the image below.

P C					
Chief Demonstra		Properties Statuto	Dependenciasi Dependente		
		Property.	1 Mar		
PostgreSQL 8.2 (x86) (scahost: 5404)		11 Description	PortpetSQ, 9-3		
PostgreSQL X.3 Socahoet 34003	F Cannell In Server	all and the second s	to afrest		
		gree Jahren	and and a second se		
	an server PostgreSQL 9-3 (bilaño		140 polgrad-45.3		
	1	Tarte Dolean	boolbart boolbart		
	-	-	postgree		
	1 Stort passeed		The second s		
	the second second		2		
Control for any other and the second for any output of the second for		14			
					• • •
		10.pem			
		3			
Partner and default an endower broadbast - Parent -					1

7. Once logged in, click on the **Database** node then select any database under it.



The next step is to run a query that sets the new passwords for the postgres user account.
 With the database node selected (for example, **stdm** in the step above), click on the 'Execute

arbitrary SQL queries' icon 🔎 in the toolbar.

In the resulting SQL Editor window, type the following command:

### ALTER USER postgres with password 'new-password';

In place of **new-password**, enter your desired password.

Do not forget to enclose the new password in single quotes.

While still in the SQL Editor window, click the 'Execute query' Licon in the toolbar. The query should run successfully with no errors.

- 9. Close the SQL Editor, choose No when requested to save changes.
- 10. Close pgAdmin III.
- 11. We need to re-enable password authentication. This is done by restoring the initial authentication settings. In this case, repeat step 1 above to open **pg\_hba.conf**.
- 12. Scroll to the bottom and replace the following section with the original text i.e. the new text should read:

# TYPE DATABASE		USER	ADDRESS	METHOD								
# IPv4 local connections:												
host al	ll all	127.0.0.1	/32 md5									
# IPv6 local connections:												
host al	ll all	::1/128	md5									

Save changes in the file.

- 13. Follow steps 4. and 5. above to restart the service.
- 14. Restart QGIS and try login into STDM using the following credentials:

Username: **postgres** 

Password: [new password set in step 8. above]

x refers to the minor version number of PostgreSQL i.e. 9.1, 9.2, 9.3, 9.4 or 9.5

# **Creating and Customizing Data Profiles**

## **Getting Started with the Configuration Wizard**

Creation and management of profiles is done through the profile configuration wizard. The wizard has several pages that allow you to configure and manage your data profiles.

To access the wizard, click the Configuration Wizard icon on the STDM plugin toolbar as shown below.

C	Configuration Wizard Icon															
Informal_Sett	tlement 🔻 🗾	¢*		<b>S</b>	1 800	<b>[</b> 2]	<b>→</b> 3	€	<u>র</u> 🛃	C	<del>d</del> a	E	?	0	←	STDM Plugin Mei

As seen in the image below, each configuration process on the wizard is represented by a single page with an interface that is divided into three sections. These sections are:

- Upper section Step/page description
- Middle section Profile setup section
- Bottom section Navigation section

				Step Desc	cription Section				
Conf	iguration	Wizard	1 100 Passary 140			23	}		
Profile I E	Manage pro	file and r	lated entities. A profile represents a collection of logically related entities, so clude individual, household, neighbourhood or even city-wide profiles.	me of which represe	nt the party and spatial	unit.	-		
Pro	ofile								
Nar	me I	nformal_s	ettlement 👻 🖷 New profile	Copy profile	😣 Delete profil	e	-		
De	scription T	he Inform	al Settlement profile is best suited to unplanned settlements with no planning	and building regulati	ons.				
	ofile entitie								
4	•								
	Na	me	Description				Setu	up Section	
1	Person		A person can be an individual, household or group						
2	Structur	e	A parcel or plot of land						
			Options	Next >	Cancel <u>H</u>	elp	- Na	vigation Bar	Sectio
_	_								

To access a step on the wizard, use the buttons on the navigation bar.

## **Navigation buttons**

**Back button** - Allows you to navigate backward through the wizard steps. The button takes you one step backward from your current step. This button remains disabled, if you are in the first page of wizard.

**Next button** - Allows you to navigate forward through the wizard steps. The button takes you one step forward from your current step. This button remains disabled, if you are in the last page of the wizard.

**Cancel button** - Used to terminate the configuration process and exit the wizard dialog.

**Finish button** - This button will appear when you get to the final step of the wizard. The button allows you to save your profile configuration settings into the database.

**Close button** - Allows you to close and exit the wizard.

Help button - Used to access the help manual.

Copyright © 2017 by UN-Habitat. All Rights Reserved

## **Creating and Saving of settings**

Every time you open the configuration wizard, it will read and load previously saved configuration settings from a file called **configuration.stc**. The configuration wizard will now be in an *edit mode*. In this mode you can create, edit or delete items - profiles, entities, columns or lookups.

**Note:** It is important to know, during edit mode any changes (create, edit or delete) you do on the wizard will NOT be saved in the database or in the configuration file until the Finish button is clicked at the last step of the configuration wizard.

In total STDM wizard has five steps, each step represents a different configuration section for the profile. The following section of the document will show details of each step.

# **Creating Draft Configuration**

Starting from STDM version 1.5, a new feature was added allowing you to save your current configuration as a draft copy.

If you are customizing a big profile that might take you hours or days to finish, you can pause the process, save your work as draft then continue later without losing data. In the previous versions, for you to save your work, you had to complete your configuration customization and commit your work to the database by clicking the **Finish** button. The down side of committing to the database restricts you from most of the customization options such as changing **Social Tenure Relationship** entities, changing column data type, etc. These restrictions are no longer happen when you save a newly created configuration or copied profile as draft.

There are three ways a draft configuration can be created during the process of customizing the configuration.

- Manual draft creation.
- When you are in the middle of customization, then you click Cancel button, you will get a prompt to create a draft configuration.
- When you create a copy profile, a draft configuration is automatically created for you.

## **Creating Draft Configuration Manually**

To create a draft configuration manually, follow the steps below.

1. Click the **Configuration Wizard** icon on the STDM plugin menu to open the **Configuration Wizard** window.



2. When the Configuration Wizard window open, click the **Options** button on the Navigation bar to reveal the draft saving menu option as shown in the image below.

Options Button				
Options 🔻	< Back Next > Car	ncel Help	-	Navigation Bar

3. To save your configuration as draft, click on the **Save draft** menu as shown in the image below.

Options 🔻	< Back	Next >	Cancel	Help
Save draft				
Discard draft				

4. A draft configuration will be created and the title bar of the **Configuration Wizard** will indicate a label **'[DRAFT]'** as shown in the image below.

	Draft Indi	ator Label			
onfiguratio	n Wizard - [ DF	4FT]			
		e entities. A profile represents a collection of logically related entities, some of whic e individual, household, neighbourhood or even city-wide profiles.	ch represent the party and spatial un		
Profile					
Name	Informal_Settle	nformal_Settlement 👻 🖶 New profile 🔛 Copy profile 😢 Delete profile			
Description	The Informal S	ttlement profile is best suited to unplanned settlements with no planning and buildin	ng regulations.		
Profile ent	ities				
+	2				
1	Name	Description			
1 Person	n A	A person can be an individual, household or group			
2 Struct	ure A	arcel or plot of land			

5. You can now continue with customization. If you cancel the process at any stage, all the work you've done will automatically be saved on the draft copy.

## **Creating Draft by Cancelling the Configuration Process**

The second way of creating a draft copy of the configuration happens when you abort the customization process by clicking on the **Cancel** button on the navigation bar of the **Configuration Wizard**. To create a draft configuration this way, follow the steps below.

1. Click the **Configuration Wizard** icon on the STDM plugin menu to open the **Configuration Wizard** window.

2. Customize the configuration.

3. To exit the configuration wizard, click the **Cancel** button. A warning message prompting you to save your work as draft will popup as shown in the image below.

💋 STDN	M Configuration Wizard
<u>^</u>	You have made some changes to your current configuration file, but you have not saved them in the database permenently. Would you like to save your changes as draft and continue next time? Save Don't Save Cancel
l	

4. To save a draft and close the wizard, click the **Save** button, but to abort and loss all your changes, click the **Don't Save** button in the message box. To abort the cancellation process and go back to the configuration wizard, click the **Cancel** button.

5. The draft configuration will be saved and will be loaded automatically next time you open the wizard.

## **Creating Draft by Copying a Profile**

The third options of creating a draft configuration happens when you make a copy of a profile. Once you make a copy of a profile, a draft configuration is created and the copy is created in there. To see this process in action, see the section <u>Copying Profile</u>.

## **Deleting a Draft Configuration**

### **Manual Delete**

To delete a draft configuration, follow the steps below.

1. Click the **Configuration Wizard** icon on the STDM plugin menu to open the **Configuration Wizard** window as highlighted in the image below.



2. If a draft configuration exists, the configuration wizard will load it and indicate that on the title bar with a label '**[DRAFT]**'.

3. Click **Options** button on the Navigation bar to reveal the draft menu options.



4. To delete the draft, click the **Discard** option.

5. A warning message box will popup

ſ	💋 stdm	Configuration Wizard	
	<u> </u>	Are you sure you want to discard the draft profile?	
		Yes No	

6. To discard the draft configuration, click **Yes** button. To abort the discarding process, click **No** button.

7. If you chose **Yes** in the previous step, the draft will be deleted and the **'DRAFT'** label on the wizard title bar will be cleared.

### **Automatic Draft Deletion**

The second way a draft configuration is discarded is when you customize your configuration up to the end. When you click on the **Finish** button in the **Configuration Wizard**, all the data is saved in the database, and if this was a draft configuration, then it will automatically be discarded. The assumption here is; you have successfully finished with your customization and successfully committed all your work permanently to the database, hence no need to keep a draft copy.

# **Configuring Directory Settings**

## **Modifying Supporting Document Path**

Supporting document path is the location for storing documents that supports the Social Tenure Relationship. Examples of supporting documents are scanned certificates, pictures in different

formats (PNG, JPG or JPEG) or even PDF documents. To modify the default supporting document path follow the steps below.

1. Click the Configuration wizard icon on the STDM plugin menu to open the Configuration Wizard window.

	Configuration V	Vizard I	con													
Inform	al_Settlement 💌 🔢	¢°		<b>3</b> 1	1 Vid	<b>[</b> 2]	→3	÷	Δī	τī	E	<del>(</del> )	?	0	←	STDM Plugin Menu

2. On the **Directory Settings** page of the Configuration Wizard, click the **Change** button next to the **Supporting Documents Edit** Box.

🥖 Configuration Wizard		
Directory Settings Specify configuration a	nd documents direc Supporting Document Edit Box	Supporting Documents – <i>Change</i> button
	·	
Supporting documents path	D:/home/STDM/supporting_documents	📑 Change
Documents output path	D:/home/STDM/output	Change
Documents template path	D:/home/STDM/templates	Change
	Options  < Back Next	> Cancel <u>H</u> elp

3. A file **Select folder** dialog will open allowing you to choose a new location for saving your files.

4. Locate the folder you would like to use for storing Supporting Documents.

5. Click **Select Folder** button to set new location as shown below.

🕺 Select Folder			X
🔾 🗢 📕 « jupiter (D:)	► home ► STDM ►	<ul> <li>✓</li> <li>Search STDM</li> </ul>	٩
Organize 🔻 New folder			0
Documents ^	Name	Date modified	Туре
J Music	output	8/10/2016 09:24	File folder
<ul> <li>Pictures</li> <li>Videos</li> </ul>	supporting_documents	8/10/2016 09:24	File folder
Videos _	🌗 templates	8/10/2016 09:24	File folder
negroup			
Computer			
Windows7_OS (C			
jupiter (D:)			
Brand Lenovo_Recovery			
- · ·			•
Folder:	supporting_documents		
		Select Folder Can	cel "#

6. The new folder path should now show on the **Supporting Document Edit** Box.

7. You can configure the rest of the directory settings **(Output and Template)** paths or click **Next** to proceed with saving the modification.

## **Modifying Documents Output Path**

Output path is the storage location for documents that are generated when you generate documents using the STDM Document Generator. Generated documents can be of different formats, but the most commonly used formats are PNG, JPG, JPEG or PDF.

To modify this path on the configuration wizard, follow the steps below.

1. Click the Configuration wizard icon on the STDM plugin menu to open the Configuration Wizard window.



2. On the **Directory Settings** page of the Configuration Wizard, click the **Change** button next to the **Output Path Edit Box**.

🥖 Configuration Wizard		
Directory Settings Specify configuration a	nd documents directory path	
Supporting documents path	D:/home/STDM/supporting_documents	P Change
Documents output path	Output Path Edit Box	Output Path <i>Change</i> button
Documents template path	D:/home/STDM/templates	E Change
	Options ▼ <back next=""></back>	Cancel Help

3. A file **Select folder** dialog will open allowing you to choose a new location for saving your files.

4. Locate the folder you would like to use for storing Supporting documents.

5. Click **Select Folder** button to set new location as shown in the image below.

🌠 Select Folder	and the second		×
🔾 🗢 📕 « jupiter (D:)	► home ► STDM ► ▼ 4	Search STDM	Q
Organize 🔻 New folder		:=	•
Documents	Name	Date modified	Туре
J Music	🚺 output	8/10/2016 09:24	File folder
Pictures	supporting_documents	8/10/2016 09:24	File folder
Videos	퉬 templates	8/10/2016 09:24	File folder
🜏 Homegroup			
🖳 Computer			
🕌 Windows7_OS (C			
🦲 jupiter (D:)			
😽 Lenovo_Recovery			
- ·	< III		P.
Folder:	output		
	Se	lect Folder Ca	ncel

6. The new folder path should now show on the **Output Document Edit** Box as shown above.

7. You can configure the rest of the directory settings **(Supporting Documents and Template)** paths or click **Next** to proceed by saving the modification.

## **Modifying Template Path**

**Template** is a type of document that enables you to generate documents such as certificate, reports, letters, etc. In STDM, you create a template using the Document Designer. Once you design and save the templates, they are automatically stored in **Template path**.

To modify the default **Template Path**, follow the steps below.

1. Click the Configuration wizard icon on the STDM plugin menu to open the Configuration Wizard window.



2. On the **Directory Settings** page of the Configuration Wizard, click the **Change** button next to the **Template Path Edit Box**.

🕺 Configuration Wizard		
Directory Settings Specify configuration ar	nd documents directory path	
Supporting documents path	D:/home/STDM/supporting_documents	Change
Documents output path	D:/home/STDM/output	Change
	Template Path Edit Box Template Path C	<i>Change</i> button
Documents template path	D:/home/STDM/templates	🖹 Change
	Options     < <u>B</u> ack     Next >	Help

3. A file selection folder dialog will open, allowing you to choose a new location for saving your files.

4. Locate the folder you would like to use for **Template Documents**.

5. Click **Select Folder** button to set new location.

🔏 Select Folder			x
🔾 🗢 📕 « jupiter (D	:) ▶ home ▶ STDM ▶	arch STDM	٩
Organize 🔻 New folde	er	:== <b>•</b>	0
🁌 Music 🔷	Name	Date modified	Туре
Pictures	🌗 output	8/10/2016 09:24	File folder
🖶 Videos	supporting_documents	8/10/2016 09:24	File folder
🔞 Homegroup	\mu templates	8/10/2016 09:24	File folder
P Computer	۲ III		4
Folde		ct Folder Car	ncel

6. The new folder path should now show on the **Template Document Edit Box** as shown above.

7. You can configure the rest of the directory settings **(Output or Supporting Documents)** paths or click **Next** to proceed with saving the modification.

# **Configuring Profiles**

## **Creating Profiles**

A profile represents a collection of logically related entities, some of which represent the party and spatial unit. STDM ships with three pre-configured sample profiles. These are:

Informal Settlement, Local government and Rural Agriculture. The image below shows how the profile page appears as shown in the image below.

Profile Page		Profile Management Section
🌿 Configuration	Wizard - [ DRAFT ]	
	rofile and related entities. A profile represents a collec of profiles include individual, household, neighbourhoor	ection of logically related entities, some of which represent the party and spatial unit. od or even city-wide proples.
Profile Name Description	· · ·	New profile     Copy profile     Source profil
		<b>•</b>
1 Person	Person is an individual	Description
2 Parcel	Parcel represents the spatial unit	
3 Survey	or Surveyor is a person who conducts f	field assessment on a parcel
4 Planne	Planner is a person who handles the	e plotting and data entry of a parcel
5 Survey	Relation of surveyor and planner	
		Options     < Back     Next >     Cancel     Help

To create a new profile, follow the steps below.

1. Click the **Configuration Wizard** icon on the STDM plugin menu to open the **Configuration Wizard** window.

	Configuration V	Vizard I	lcon												
			_												
Inform	nal_Settlement 💌 🕎	¢°		s 1	8	<b>[</b> 2]	<b>→</b> Σ	÷	$\sim_{\overline{\Omega}}$	÷٦	69	?	Ð	←	STDM Plugin Menu

2. When **the Configuration Wizard** window opens, click the **Next** button on the wizard Navigation bar.

Options	<u>N</u> ext >	Cancel	<u>H</u> elp	←	Navigation Bar
---------	----------------	--------	--------------	---	----------------

Copyright  $\ensuremath{\textcircled{C}}$  2017 by UN-Habitat. All Rights Reserved

3. When you get to the **Profile** page, click the **New Profile** button on the **Profile Management Section** as shown in the image below.

Profile Pag	e	
🦸 Configurat	on Wizard - [ DRAFT ]	
	profile and related entities. A profile represents a collection of logically related entities, some of which represent the party and spatial unit. es of profiles include individual, household, neighbourhood or even city-wide profiles.	
Profile		
Name	Local_Government 🔹 🖬 New profile 🔂 Delete profile	
Descriptio	n The Local Government profile is best suited to local government such as districts, zones, counties and so on.	

4. A **Profile Editor** window will open to allow you enter details of the new profile as shown in the image below.

🕺 Profile Ed	itor 🤋 🕱
Profile name	Informal Settlement
Description	A configuration best suited to unplanned settlements with
	OK Cancel

5. On the **Profile Editor** window, enter the following details.

- **Profile name** This is a mandatory field that represents the name of the profile you want to create. For example, **Local Government**.
- Description A brief narrative of what your profile represents.

6. When you are done, click the **OK** button to save your work and close the **Profile Editor** window. If you wish to close the **Profile Editor** without saving any details, click the **Cancel** button.

7. If the profile was saved correctly it should appear on the **Profile** *Select* dropdown.

Note: The Profile Editor window will not allow you to save without entering the Profile name.

## **Copying Profile**

Using STDM version 1.5, you can create a new profile from an existing one via the copy functionality. Not only is this feature a time saver, it helps you customize new profiles from the existing ones.

Copying a profile gives you the ability to:

• change the profile, entities, columns, and lookup name

- delete entities, columns, and lookups
- re-define Social Tenure Relationship
- change column data type,
- enable and disable supporting documents from an **Entity**.

To make a copy of a profile, follow the steps below.

1. Click the **Configuration Wizard** icon on the STDM plugin menu to open the **Configuration Wizard** window as shown in the image below.

	Configuration Wizard Icon																			
		V																		
Inform	nal_Settlement 🔻		¢		S	E	8	<u>[</u> ]	<b>→</b> 2	÷Ī	۵Ţ	τī	E	<b>G</b> D	E	?	0	←	STDM Plugin Me	enu

2. When **the Configuration Wizard** window opens, click the **Next** button on the wizard Navigation bar as shown in the image below.

Options ▼ < <u>B</u> ack	Next >	Cancel	<u>H</u> elp	] ←	Navigation Bar
--------------------------	--------	--------	--------------	-----	----------------

3. When you get to the **Profile** page, select the profile of your choice then click the **Copy Profile** button on the **Profile Management Section** as shown in the image below.

	1. Sele	ct Profile		2. Click		Copy Profile	
							_
🧭 Configuratio	n Wizard - [ DRAFT ]						
	profile and related entities of profiles include individ				es, some of w	hich represent th	e party and spatial unit.
Profile		/		-			
Name	Local_Government			New profile	-	Copy profile	😣 Delete profile
Description	The Local Government p	rofile is best suit	ted to local governme	ent such as districts, z	ones, countie	s and so on.	

4. A **Copy Profile** dialog window will open similar to the one shown below.

🕺 Copy prof	le 🤋 🕱
From Profile	Informal_Settlement
To Profile	Informal_Settlement_copy
Description	The Informal Settlement profile is best suited to unplanned settlements wi
	OK Cancel

5. On the edit box titled **To Profile**, enter the name of the copy profile you want to create. By default the **To Profile** will be pre-populated with the name of the profile you want to copy from appended with the word **'\_copy'**.

6. On the edit box titled **Description**, enter the description of the new profile.

7. Click on the **OK** button to create a copy profile, however, if you wish to abort the copy process click the **Cancel** button.

8. If you have clicked on the **OK** button in the previous section, a copy profile will be created, and will now be available on the Profile selection drop down as shown in the image below.

Copie	Profile
🧭 Configuration Wizard - [ DRAFT ]	
	. A profile represents a collection of logically related entities, some of which represent the party and spatial unit. Jal, household, neighbourhood or even city-wide profiles.
Profile	,
Name Local_Government_cop	y 🗣 New profile 🖓 Delete profile
Description The Local Government	profile is best suited to local government such as districts, zones, counties and so on.

8. Now you can customize the copy profile.

## **Customising Profiles**

With the new version of STDM, you can customize your existing profiles at any time. The process of adding, editing or deleting items related to the profile is what is known as profile customisation. Once you save your customisation, this changes will reflect both logically on the profile and also at the database level.

To customize your profile, follow the steps and the links below.

1. Click the **Configuration Wizard** icon on the STDM plugin menu to open the **Configuration Wizard** window.



2. When the **Configuration Wizard** window opens, click the **Next** button on the wizard Navigation bar.

Options  < <u>B</u> ack	Next >	Cancel	<u>H</u> elp	] —	Navigation Bar
-------------------------	--------	--------	--------------	-----	----------------

3. When you get to the **Profile** page, click the **Profile Select** dropdown button on the Profile Management Section as shown below.

Profile	
Select	Informal_Settlement
Description:	Informal_Settlement Local_Government Rural_Agriculture

4. Select the profile you would like to customize. Once selected, contents related to that entity are loaded and displayed in various pages of the configuration wizard.

- 5. To perform customisation of various items follow any of the links below.
  - a. Customize profile by adding entities <u>Creating Entities</u>.
  - b. Customize profile by editing entities <u>Editing Entities</u>
  - c. Customize profile by deleting entities Deleting Entities
  - d. Customize profile by creating Lookups Creating Lookups
  - e. Customize profile by editing Lookups <u>Editing Lookups</u>
  - f. Customize profile by deleting Lookups <u>Deleting Lookups</u>
  - g. Customize profile by enabling many parties to a single spatial unit <u>Setting One or More</u> <u>Parties per Spatial Unit</u>

6. When you are done with any of the customisation, click **Next** on the **Navigation Bar** to access the last Page and save your changes.

**Important Notes:** Customizing of Social Tenure Relationship is NOT allowed once it has been defined and saved in the database.

# **Deleting Profiles**

Deleting profiles involves removing all the items that represent a profile both logically and physically on the database. Logically these items include, **Entities, Lookups, Lookup Values** and **Social Tenure Relationship** definitions. At the database level, these items are represented as **Tables** and **Views**.

Great care should be taken before deleting a profile as it is a non-reversible process. Once a profile is deleted you cannot access the profile and data stored on the profile tables.

To delete a profile, follow the steps below.

1. Click the **Configuration Wizard** icon on the STDM plugin menu to open the **Configuration Wizard** window.

	Configuration W	izard l	on													
Inform	al_Settlement 💌 📝	¢°		§ 🗄	80	<b>[</b> 2]	<b>→</b> 3	÷	Ϋ́ς	<b>i</b> [	<b>E</b>	E	?	Û	←	STDM Plugin Menu

2. When the **Configuration Wizard** window opens, click the **Next** button on the wizard Navigation bar.

Options 🝷	< <u>B</u> ack	<u>N</u> ext >	Cancel	Help	←	Navigation Bar

3. When you get to the **Profile** page, click the **Delete Profile** button on the **Profile Management Section**.

Configuration Wizard - [ DRAFT ]	
Profile Manage profile and related entities. A profile represents a collection of logically related entities, some of which represen Examples of profiles include individual, household, neighbourhood or even city-wide profiles.	It the party and spatial unit.
Profile	
Name Local_Government 💌 🖶 New profile 🖫 Copy profile	😢 Delete profile
Description The Local Government profile is best suited to local government such as districts, zones, counties and so on.	

4. A warning dialog window, (see image below) will popup reminding you of the consequences.

💋 STDM	
<u> </u>	You will loose all items related to this profile i.e entities, lookups and Social Tenure Relationships. Are you sure you want to delete this profile?
	OK Cancel

5. If you wish to delete and close the warning dialog window, click the **OK** button. However, to abort the delete process and close the warning dialog window, click the **Cancel** button.

6. If the profile was deleted, it will be removed from the list in the **Select Profile** drop down.

# **Configuring Entities**

# **Creating Entities**

An entity represents a unit of storage within a profile. It represents a real-world object that can easily be identified e.g. person, farmer, plot or structure. In the profile, these real-world objects are logically represented as entities, while at the database level, they are represented as tables or table views.

To create a new entity, follow the steps below.

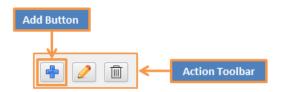
1. Click the **Configuration Wizard** icon on the STDM plugin menu to open the **Configuration Wizard** window.



2. When the **Configuration Wizard** window opens, click the **Next** button on the wizard **Navigation Bar (once)** to access the **Profile** Page.

Profile Page	Entity Management Section
🚺 Configuration W	izard 📃 🗆 🖾
	e and related entities. A profile represents a collection of logically related entities, some of which represent the party and spatial unit. rofiles include individual, household, neighbourhood or even city-wide profiles.
Profile	
Name Loo	cal_Government 👻 🖶 New profile 🔛 Copy profile 🔇 Delete profile
Description The	e Local Government profile is best suited to local government such as districts, zones, counties and so on.
Profile entities	¥
	Action Toolbar
Nam	e Description
1 Person	Person is an individual
2 Parcel	Parcel represents the spatial unit
3 Surveyor	Surveyor is a person who conducts field assessment on a parcel
4 Planner	Planner is a person who handles the plotting and data entry of a parcel
5 Survey	Relation of surveyor and planner
	Options  < <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel <u>H</u> elp

3. On the **Entity Management Section**, click the **Add** button on the **Action Tool bar**.



4. An **Entity Editor** window will open as shown below.

	Entity editor
	Entity Name
	Description Table description
	Allow supporting documents?
	OK Cancel
L	

5. Enter all the required fields to describe your entity.

- **Entity Name** Mandatory field for your entity name. A profile cannot have two entities sharing the same name; the name you choose for your entity should be unique in your current profile.
- **Description** Brief narrative of what the entity represents in your current profile.
- Allow supporting documents Check this option if your entity will have supporting documents functionality.

6. To save and close the entity editor window, click the **OK** button. If everything was entered correctly and no errors were found, the new entity should appear on the *Grid* on the entity section. But if you want to abort and exit the creation of the new entity, click the **Cancel** button.

#### **Important Notes:**

**Note 1:** Entity name is a mandatory field; you cannot save an entity without entering an entity name.

**Note 2:** System will pop an error if you attempt to save an entity with a name that already exist on the current profile.

# **Editing Entities**

Editing an entity process allows you to change properties of an existing entity. You might be forced to edit an entity in cases where you might have misspelled or entered a wrong name or description for your entity.

To edit an entity, follow the steps below.

1. Click the **Configuration Wizard** icon on the STDM plugin menu to open the **Configuration Wizard** window.



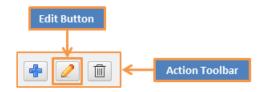
2. When the **Configuration Wizard** window opens, click the Next button on the wizard **Navigation Bar (once)** to access the **Profile Page**.

Prof	file	e Page	Entity Management Section
🔨 Cq	fi	iguration Wizard	
Pro	Ν	Manage profile and r	related entities. A profile represents a collection of logically related entities, some of which represent the party and spatial unit. include individual, household, neighbourhood or even city-wide profiles.
		ofile	
	Van	me Local_Gov	vernment 🗸 🚽 New profile 🖓 Copy profile 🚫 Delete profile
0	Des	scription The Local	Government profile is best suited to local government such as districts, zones, counties and so on.
	Pro	ofile entities	¥
	4		Action Toolbar
		Name	Description
	1	Person	Person is an individual
	2	Parcel	Parcel represents the spatial unit
	3	Surveyor	Surveyor is a person who conducts field assessment on a parcel
	4	Planner	Planner is a person who handles the plotting and data entry of a parcel
	5	Survey	Relation of surveyor and planner
			Options     ▼

3. On the **Entities View Grid**, click to select an **Entity** you wish to edit as shown below. The selected entity should now be highlighted with a different colour to indicate selection.

	Name	Description
1	Person	A person can be an individual, household or group
2	Structure	A parcel or plot of land

4. On the **Action Tool bar**, click the **Edit** button.



5. Entity Editor dialog window will open with fields (Name, Description and Supporting documents check box) pre-populated with details of the selected entity as shown in the image below.

	🚀 Entity edi	tor 🤶 🔀								
	Entity Name	Person								
•	Description	A Person can be an individual, household or group								
		X Allow supporting documents?								
		OK Cancel								

#### 6. Make your changes

7. To save and close the **Entity Editor**, click the **OK** button. If you wish to cancel your changes and close the Editor window, click the **Cancel** button.

8. If you saved your work, the new changes should now show on the *Entities View Grid*.

### **Important Notes**

**Note 1:** If the entity has already been saved in the database from the previous configuration sessions, the system will not allow you to edit the *Entity Name* or change *Supporting document* check box fields. When the *Entity Editor* window opens the two fields will be disabled. The only property you will be able to edit is the *Description*. However, if this is a new entity then all the fields *(Entity Name, Description* and *Supporting documents* check box) are eligible for editing.

🚀 Entity edi	tor 🤋 🔀
Entity Name	Person
Description	A person can be an individual, household or g
	Allow supporting documents?
	OK Cancel

# **Deleting Entities**

As part of entity management, **Configuration Wizard** allows you to delete existing entities.

To delete existing entities, follow the steps below.

1. Click the **Configuration Wizard** icon on the STDM plugin menu to open the **Configuration Wizard** window.

	Configurat	ion W	/izard	lcon															
		<b>1</b>																	
Informa	l_Settlement 💌		¢		ø	E	80	<b>[</b> ?]	->∑	÷	₹.	έą	C	ô	E	?	0	←	STDM Plugin Menu

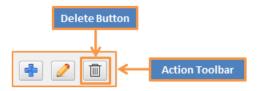
2. When the **Configuration Wizard** window opens, click the **Next** button on the wizard **Navigation Bar (once)** to access the **Profile Page**.

Options <ul> <li>&lt; <u>B</u>ack</li> </ul>	Next >	Cancel	<u>H</u> elp	) 🔶	Navigation Bar
--	--------	--------	--------------	-----	----------------

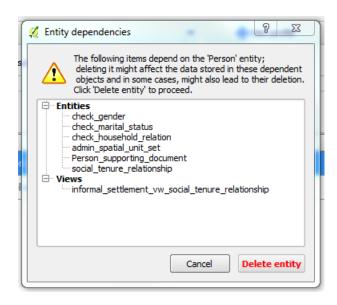
3. On the **Entities View Grid**, click to select an entity you wish to edit. The selected entity should now be highlighted with a different colour to indicate selection.

Γ	Name	Description
1	Person	A person can be an individual, household or group
2	Structure	A parcel or plot of land

4. On the Action Toolbar, click the Delete button.



3. If there are other items in the profile referencing this entity, an **Entity Dependency** warning dialog will popup to show you the items as shown in the image below.



4. Read the warning message on the **Entity Dependency** window **carefully.** If you are sure you want to delete the entity and close the dialog window, click the **Delete entity** button. However, if you wish to abort the delete process and close the dialog, click the **Cancel** button.

5. If you clicked the **Delete entity** button on the **Entity** dependency dialog window, the deleted entity will be removed from the **Entity View Grid** in the wizard.

**Note:** Entity Dependencies dialog will NOT show if the entity you are deleting has no items referencing it. Clicking **Delete** button on the **Entity View Grid** will remove the selected entity without any warning.

# **Configuring Columns**

# **Creating Columns**

Columns are the properties of an entity. Columns are the actual locations where data is stored in a database - think of columns as pigeon holes that hold data values. Each column in an entity must be represented by a unique name and must have a **data type** that defines which type of data will be stored in that column. Example of columns for a **Person Entity** would be **first\_name**, **last\_name**, **gender or date\_of\_birth, etc.** 

To create a column on an entity, follow the steps below.

1. Click the **Configuration Wizard** icon on the **STDM Plugin Menu** to open the **Configuration Wizard** window.



2. When the **Configuration Wizard** window opens, click the *Next* button on the wizard **Navigation Bar (once)** to access the **Profile Page.** 

3. From **Profile Select** drop down, choose a **Profile** you want to customize.

Profile	
Select	Informal_Settlement -
Description	Informal_Settlement Local_Government
beschption	Rural Agriculture

4. All the related entities, lookups and lookup values for the selected profile should load onto various pages of the wizard.

5. Click the **Next** button on the **Navigation Bar** to access the **Entity Customisation** page as shown in the image below.

onfi juration Wizard						2
ntity Customization Add or edic enuty columns, look	Entities V	iew	er			<b>Columns Viewer</b>
Entities Person Structure	-		lumns			
			Name	Data Type		Description
		1	code	Varchar	The unique ident	tifier of the structure
		2	name	Varchar	User friendly nar	me of the structure
		3	ownership_type	Lookup	The ownership t	ype of the structure
		4	related_structures	Multiple_select	Related structur	es within the structure
		5	recognition_status	Lookup	Recognition stat authorities	us of the structure by
		6	utilities	Multiple_select	Utilities available	in the structure
		7	spatial_geometry	Geometry	A digitized geogr	raphic extent of the structure

6. On the **Entities Viewer**, click to select an entity to customize. The selected entity should now have a highlighted color indicating selection as shown in the image below.

Entities	Columns		
Person Structure	🖶 🖉 🔟		
	Name	Data Type	Description

7. If you selected a new entity the **Columns Viewer** section should be empty.

8. On the **Columns Viewer** section, click the **Add** button on the **Action Toolbar** as shown in the image below.



9. A **Column Editor** window should now open to enable you create a new column as shown below.

🕺 Column editor	8 23			
Column name	Enter column name			
Description	Column Description			
User tip	Enter text to appear in the form as a tooltip			
Column data type Varying-length text 💌				
	Column properties			
	Mandatory			
	X Searchable			
	Unique			
	Column Indexed			
	OK Cancel			

10. Enter the following details for your column

**a. Column name** - Name used to define a single property on an entity. For example, on an entity *Person* you can have a property named first\_*person*.

Important things to remember when entering a Column name;

- 1. Column name should only be in lower case.
- 2. Spaces are not allowed in a **Column** name. All spaces you enter will automatically be replaced with an underscore (\_) character.
- 3. This field is mandatory; you cannot create a column without it.

The following are reserved keywords in STDM; you cannot use them as column names.

- id
- documents
- spatial\_unit
- supporting\_document
- social\_tenure
- social\_tenure\_relationship
- Geometry

**b. Description** - Long string text that explains the meaning of the column in an entity. Field is optional; you can create a column without it.

**c. User tip** - Short text that appears next to this column on the data entry form for this entity, guides the users on what to enter on this column. This field is optional; you can create a column without it.

**d. Column data type** - Defines the type of value that should be stored in this column in the database. Every column **MUST** define a data type property. STDM supports twelve different data types to choose from depending on the value you want to store in your column. <u>Understanding Column Data Types</u> topic explains in-depth the meaning of each supported data type.

**e. Columns property button** - It opens a window to enter default values for the column depending on the selected data type. Setting of these properties is mandatory for the following data types:

- Geometry
- Related Entity
- Single Select Lookup
- Multiple Select Lookup

**f. Mandatory check box** - This makes the column a mandatory field when being entered on the data form.

**g. Searchable check box** - Columns marked as searchable will be used as filter fields when searching for an entity in various data browsing windows e.g. the **View Social Tenure Relationship** window. Please see below.

	:h By:				
Pe	rson Structure			Searchal	ble columns
	Alan				
		in col	umn		
	First Name				-
	<b>Filter</b>				
	🔍 Search		4	Clear Result	s
Searc	h Results:				
	28				

**h. Unique check box** - When enabled, this box guarantees uniqueness for a record in an entity. No two records in an entity with the same values for the column are allowed.

**i. Column Index check box** - This allows an index to be created in the database based on the column. Indexing guarantees speedy results when searching for a record in a database.

11. Once you have entered the required fields for the column, click the **OK** button to save the column and close the **Column Editor** window. However, if you wish to abort your column creation process, click the **Cancel** button.

12. If you saved your column successfully it should now appear on your **Columns Viewer** section as illustrated below.

Entities		Columns		
Person Structure		+ 🦉 🔟		
		Name	Data Type	Description
	>	1 first_name	Varying-length text	Individual first name
				_
			New Column	

# **Understanding Column Data Types**

Data type is a categorization of data in an entity. An entity can store different types of data depending on the data type configured on each entity column. Integers, decimal values, strings, lookup values can be stored in one entity but separated by columns of different data types.

STDM supports twelve different data types for your columns i.e. Varying-length text, Unlimitedlength text, Whole number, Decimal number, Date, Date and time, Geometry, Yes/No, Related Entity, Single Select Lookup, Administrative Spatial Unit, and Multiple Select Lookup.

Each of this data types are suited for different purpose and are configured differently. The following section will discuss in-depth about each of this data type and show you simple examples on their usage.

## 1. Varying-length text

These are alpha-numeric character strings of length n (n should be less than 4000 characters). If you select this Varying-length text data type and you do not specify a length, STDM will set the column to have a default maximum of 30 characters.

### Example:

Column Name	Value
first_name	Alan
middle_name	Mathison
last_name	Turing

### Properties to set: <u>Understanding Column Data Types</u>

#### Character length

🌠 Varchar property	? X
Character length 30	
ОК	Cancel

### Form widget:

#### Line Edit Box

First Name	Alan	
Middle Name	Mathison	Line Edit Box
Last Name	Turing	

## 2. Unlimited-length text

This is an alpha-numeric character string of unlimited length.

#### **Example:**

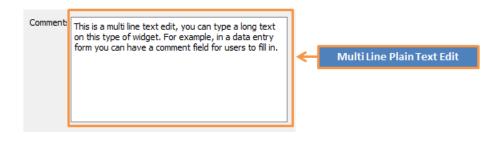
Column Name	Value			
comment	This is a multi-line text edit, you can type a long text on			
notes	Write some notes			

#### **Properties to set:**

None

### Form widget:

Multiple Line Plain Text Edit Box.



## 3. Whole Number

This data type will store numeric characters only; no string characters are allowed on this field.

### Example:

Column Name	Value
serial_number	2521001
plot_code	10001

### **Properties to set:**

Minimum value

Maximum value

🚀 Whole numb	er properties 💡 🔀
Minimum value	1001
Maximum value	1999
	OK Cancel

### Form Widget:

Spin Edit Box



## 4. Decimal Number

This data type will store real numbers with fixed precision and scale (decimal places).

### Example:

Column Name	Value	Precision/Decimal places
Area	85.678	Precision: 5 Decimal places: 3
value	633.56	Precision: 5 Decimal places: 2

#### **Properties to set:**

- **Precision** The total allowed digits in the decimal number.
- **Decimal places** Also known as scale; is the number of digits to the right of the decimal point in a number.
- Minimum value Lower bound constraint for acceptable decimal value.
- **Maximum value** Maximum bound constraint for acceptable decimal value.

🔏 Decimal Prop	perties ? X
Precision	18
Decimal places	6
Minimum value	0.000000
Maximum value	0.000000
(	OK Cancel

### Form widget:

Double Spin Box

Area	0.00	÷	
		<b>&lt;</b>	Spin Edit Box
Value	0.00	-	

### 5. Date

Column with Date data type will store a date value.

Example:

Column Name	Value
dob	01/01/1980
date_of_survey	12/08/2015

#### **Properties to set:**

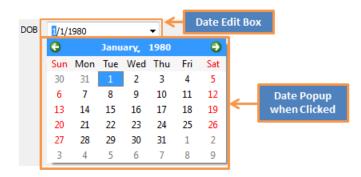
**Minimum** - Fixed or Current date; This puts a lower bound constraint for the minimum date value that can be entered on a column defined with a date data type.

**Maximum** - Fixed or Current date; This puts an upper bound constraint for the maximum date value that can be entered on a column defined with this data type.

🔏 Date properties	8 23
Minimum Fixed Date Current Date	Minimum date 12/1/1950
Maximum Fixed Date Current Date	Maximum date 12/31/2050
	OK Cancel

### Form widget:

Date Edit Box



## 6. Date with time

Data type will be for columns that want to store date and time values.

### Example:

Column Name	Value
record_date	01/01/1980 12:30:00
log_time	12/08/2015 01:14:05

### **Properties to set:**

**Minimum** - Fixed or Current date and time; This puts a lower bound constraint for the minimum date value that can be entered on a column defined with a date data type.

**Maximum** - Fixed or Current date and time; This puts an upper bound constraint for the maximum date value that can be entered on a column defined with this data type.

If **Current Date** is selected, then the current date (at the time the form is loaded) will be set as the minimum or maximum date.

🔏 Datetime proper	ties		ନ୍ତ	23
Minimum	Minimum data	9/30/1950 00:00	.00	-
Current Date	Minimum date	9/30/1950 00:00	1:00	
Maximum				
<ul> <li>Fixed Date</li> <li>Current Date</li> </ul>	Maximum date	12/31/2050 23:	59:59	•
		ОК	Cano	el

#### Form widget:

Date/Time Edit



### 7. Geometry

This represents 2D vector types. Used for columns with spatial data.

#### Example:

Column Name	Value
location	geometry data

#### **Properties to Set:**

a. Geometry Type - STDM ships with six different vector geometry types for selection, these are - *Point, Line, Polygon, Multipoint, Multiline and Multipolygon.* 

b. Coordinate System - This is selected from QGIS Coordinate Reference System (CRS). It depends on the regional extent of the area you want to work in.

🚀 Geometry properties 🛛 💡 🔀		
POLYGON		
Select		
OK Cancel		

#### Form widget:

None.

### 8. Yes/No

This represents a **True/False** column which stores a single value from only two possible choices, e.g. *True or False*, *1 or 0, Yes or No.* 

#### **Example:**

Column Name	Value
running water	True

#### **Properties to set:**

None

#### Form widget:

Check Box

Do you have running water? 🔲 🔶 Check Box

### 9. Related Entity

The column with this data type will have a foreign key relationship with another column in a different Entity. Values in a column using Related Entity data type are picked from a Primary Entity, which acts as the master reference.

#### **Example:**

Column Name	Value
enumerator	5
respondent	20

#### **Properties to set:**

Primary Entity - This is the Entity you want to create a relationship with. It is where you pull values from.

Primary Unique column - This is the column from the *Primary Entity*. We store this unique key in our *Related Entity* column to establish a link with the *Primary Entity*.

Display column - Columns to show on the selection form when fetching data from the *Primary Entity*.

#### Widget on form



## **10. Single Select Lookup**

Data type allows you to pick single values from a *Lookup Entity* that is linked to the column.

**Example:** 

Column Name	Value
marital_status	Single
gender	Female

#### **Properties to set:**

Lookup - This is a Lookup Entity that is linked to a column. Data will be fetched from this lookup.

🔏 Looki	up property	8 23
Lookup	check_social_tenure_relationship_	New lookup
	OK	Cancel

#### Widget on form:

#### Combo Box

Marital Status	Married	]←	Combo Box
	Married 🗸		
	Married Single Divorced Widow Widower Cohabiting Separated		Combo Box - Clicked

## **11. Administrative Spatial Unit**

This data type creates a lookup column that fetches its data from the **Administrative Units Entity**. You are not required to setup the lookup relationship explicitly. Once you choose this data type for your column, STDM will automatically create a **Single Select Lookup** pointing to the **Administrative Units Entity** for you.

#### **Properties to set:**

None

#### Widget on form:

Residence Area	6	←	Selectable Edit Box
----------------	---	---	---------------------

### 12. Multiple Select Lookup

The data type allows you to create a multiple selection column. Multiple values for this column are fetched from the **Lookup Entity** that you setup on **Column Property** window.

#### **Properties to set:**

Lookup - This is the Lookup Entity used by the column to fetch multiple values.

🚀 Lookup property	8 23
Lookup check_social_tenure_relationship_	New lookup
ОК	Cancel

#### Widget on form:

#### A list with check Box.



## 13. Auto Generated Code

This column data type can be used to create codes for unique identifier columns such as structure number, house number, plot number, etc. The data type may have just a serial number such as 001, 002, etc or a code with a prefix such as KE/NRB/0001, E001, etc.

#### **Properties to set:**

#### **Prefix source**

This refers to the entity from which the prefix codes that are added in front of the serial number are drawn from.

The options are:

- None only a serial number will be shown.
- **admin\_spatial\_unit\_set** the code prefixes are drawn based on the Administrative Units Manager, in which the codes of the selected administrative unit and higher labels are added in front of the serial number.
- **current profile lookup entities** the code prefixes are drawn from the code of the selected lookup value.

#### Separator

This refers to the symbol or character separating each code element.

#### **Leading Zero**

This refers to the zeros that are part of the serial number that are added in front of the increasing numbers. The image below illustrates the **Auto Generated Code Property**.

🦸 Auto Generated Code Property 🤉 🗙										
Prefix source admin_spatial_unit_set										
Separator	Hyphen (-)		-							
Leading zero	00		-							
OK Cancel										

#### Widget on form:

You need to click on the code icon on the right side of the form widget to generate the unique code. If you have chosen a prefix source in the **Auto Generated Code Property**, you need to select the prefix source from the **Administrative Unit Selector** or the **Lookup Value Selector** that helps you to generate the code.

The image below shows auto-generated code widget created with a prefix source from **admin\_spatial\_unit\_set**, hyphen separator and two leading zeros (00).

NRB-KIL-YAY-0001	× 🕨

The image below shows auto generated code widget created with a prefix source from a **lookup entity**, underscore separator and no leading zeros.

TEN_1	× 🕨
-------	-----

The image below shows auto generated code widget created with a no prefix source, no separator and two leading zeroes (00).

002 × 🕨

**Note**: If the prefix source is None, the **Separator** drop down is disabled because separator has no usage in this case.

## **Editing Columns**

To edit a column, follow the steps below.

1. Click the **Configuration Wizard** icon on the **STDM Plugin Menu** to open the **Configuration Wizard** window.

	Configurat	ion W	/izard I	con														
		$\checkmark$																
Inform	nal_Settlement 💌		¢°		ø	E	800	<b>[2</b> ]	→3	÷	×Ω	έŢ	<del>(</del> )	?	0	←	STDM Plugin	Me

2. When the **Configuration Wizard** window opens, click the *Next* button on the wizard **Navigation Bar (once)** to access the **Profile Page**.

3. From **Profile Select** drop down, choose a **Profile** you want to customize.

Profile	
Select	Informal_Settlement
Description	Informal_Settlement Local_Government
Description	Rural Agriculture

4. All the related entities, lookups and lookup values for the selected profile should load onto various pages of the wizard.

5. Click Next button on the Navigation Bar to access the Entity Customisation page.

6. On the **Entities Viewer**, click to select an entity to customize as illustrated in the image below. The selected entity should now have a highlighted color indicating selection. On the **Columns Viewer**, a list of all columns that belong to this entity will be displayed.

Entities		Col	umns		
Person Parcel		4	Þ 🦉 🔟		
Surveyor Planner			Name	Data Type	Description
Survey		1	first_name	Varchar	First name
		2	middle_name	Varchar	Middle name
	<b></b> >	3	last_name	Varchar	Last name
		4	gender_id	Lookup	Gender
		5	date_of_birth	Date	date of birth
		6	marital_status	Lookup	The marital status of the person
		7	national_id	Varchar	National Identification
		8	physical_address	Varchar	Physical Address
		9	telephone_number	Varchar	telephone_number
	][				

7. On the **Columns Viewer**, click to select the column you wish to edit, then click the **Edit** button.

		3. Click Edit Button				
Person Parcer		Numns 🗸				
Surveyor Planner		Name	Data Type	Description		
Survey	1	first_name	Varying-length text	First name	555	
1. Select Entit	2	middle_name	Varying-length text	Middle name		
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	last_name	Varying-length text	Last name	┝	2. Select Column
	4	gender_id	Single Select Lookup	Gender		
	5	date_of_birth	Date	date of birth		
	6	marital status	Sinale Select Lookup	The marital status of the		

8. The **Column Editor** should open with fields pre-populated with details of the selected column as shown in the image below.

🕺 Column edito	s s	
Column name	last_name	Editable fields
Description	Last name of a person	
User tip	Enter last name of a person	
Column data type	Varying-length text	
	Column properties	
	Mandatory	
	X Searchable	
	Column Indexed	
	OK Cancel	

9. Make the relevant changes.

10. Once you are done, click the **OK** button to save the edits and close the **Column Editor**. To abort the editing process and close the **Column editor**, click the **Cancel** button.

11. If the editing and saving was successful, new changes should now reflect on the **Columns Viewer** on the **Entity Customization Page** of the wizard.

**Note:** If a column you intend to edit has already been saved in the database from a previous configuration process, you will NOT be able to edit the following fields;

- Column name
- Column data type
- Column properties

🕺 Column editor	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
Column name	last_name
Description	Last name Disabled Fields
User tip	Enter text to appear in the form as a tooltip
Column data type	Varying-length text
	Column properties
	Mandatory
	Searchable
	Unique
	Column Indexed
	OK Cancel

# **Deleting Columns**

To remove a column from an entity, follow the steps below.

1. Click the **Configuration Wizard** icon on the **STDM Plugin Menu** to open the **Configuration Wizard** window.

	Configuration Wizard	Icon									
Inform	al_Settlement 💌 👿 🧬	<b>D</b>	1	) []	<b>→</b> 3	<b>4</b>	<u>র</u> 🛃	ô1 🛛	0	←	STDM Plugin Me

2. When the **Configuration Wizard** window opens, click the *Next* button on the wizard **Navigation Bar (once)** to access the *Profile Page*.

3. From **Profile Select** drop down, choose a **Profile** you want to customize.

Profile	
Select	Informal_Settlement
Description:	Informal_Settlement Local_Government Rural_Agriculture

4. All the related entities, lookups and lookup values for the selected profile should load onto various pages of the wizard.

5. Click the **Next** button on the **Navigation Bar** to access the **Entity Customization** page.

6. On the **Entities Viewer**, click to select an entity to remove a column from. The selected entity should now have a highlighted color indicating selection. On the **Columns Viewer** a list of all columns that belong to this entity will be displayed.

Entities		Columns								
Person Parcel		4	F) 🖉 🛅							
Surveyor Planner			Name	Data Type	Description					
Survey		1	first_name	Varchar	First name					
		2	middle_name	Varchar	Middle name					
	<b></b>	3	last_name	Varchar	Last name					
		4	gender_id	Lookup	Gender					
		5	date_of_birth	Date	date of birth					
		6	marital_status	Lookup	The marital status of the person					
		7	national_id	Varchar	National Identification					
		8	physical_address	Varchar	Physical Address					
		9	telephone_number	Varchar	telephone_number					
	]									

7. On the **Columns Viewer**, click to select the column you wish to edit, then click the **Delete** button.

		3. Click Delete E	Button			
Person Parcel Surveyor		Columns 🔶				
Planner		Name	Data Type	Description		
Survey		1 first_name	Varying-length text	First name		
		2 middle_name	Varying-length text	Middle name		
1. Select Entity		3 last_name	Varying-length text	Last name	┣	2. Select Column
		4 gender_id	Single Select Lookup	Gender		
		5 date_of_birth	Date	date of birth		
	] [[	6 marital status	Sinale Select Lookup	The marital status of the	◄	

8. If a column has dependencies, a Column Dependencies warning window will open. This window, as seen in the image below, shows you which entities and database views depend on the column you want to delete. This window will warn you of the implications of deleting the column. Read carefully before proceeding.



9. If you wish to remove the column from the entity completely and close the **Column Dependency** dialog, click the **Delete column** button. However, to abort the delete process, click the **Cancel** button.

10. If the delete is successful, the column should be removed from the **Columns Viewer** on the wizard.

#### **Important Notes**

**Note 1:** Column Dependency dialog is not shown if the column you are deleting is not used by other entities or views.

Note 2: Once you delete a column, data stored in the column will be lost permanently.

## **Re-ordering Columns**

In a newly created profile, it is possible to re-arrange the order on which they appear on the **Columns Viewer**.

To re-order the columns on the **Columns Viewer**, follow the steps below.

1. Create columns on an **Entity** as illustrated in <u>Creating Columns</u> section.

2. On the **Columns Viewer** click and hold the mouse (left mouse button) on the column you wish to move.

3. Now drag the column to a different position on the list of columns.

4. Release the mouse on the new position.

	Data Type	Description	
first_name	Varying-length text	Person first name	
last_name	Varying-length text	Person last name	
middle_name	Varying-length text	Person middle name	Click and hold the mou the column to mov
lumns			
+ 🦉 🔟			
Name	Data Type	Description	
first-name	Varying-length text	Person first name	2
middle_name	Varying-length text	Person middle name	Drag the column to n
middle_name	Varying-length text	Person middle name	position
olumns			3
	Data Type	Description	
	Data Type Varying-length text	Description Person middle name	Release the mouse of desired position
P 🖉 🔟			Release the mouse of

5. Your column should now be in a new position.

# **Configuring Lookups**

# **Creating Lookups**

Lookups are special entities used to store values that rarely change. The values from the lookups are used by other entities with columns of type **Single Select Lookup** and **Multiple Select** to quickly retrieve values when entering data. For example, when creating a person entity, the column gender, which has **Single Select Lookup** as the data type will have a drop down widget that retrieves values from a lookup entity **check\_gender** as shown in the image below.

K	Person Editor	? ×
	Primary Suppo	orting Documents
	First Name Middle Name Last Name	Gender column in <i>Person</i> entity retrieves column values from <i>check_gender</i> lookup
	National ID	883473
	Gender	Male 🔹 🚺
	Date Of Birth	Female
	Marital Status	
	Household Relation	Husband 🔻 🚺
	Telephone Number	07339483
	Address	993843
	Residence Area	E 1

Each lookup entity **must** have a list of values - **lookup values**. The following section shows you how to create a lookup and related lookup values.

To create a lookup entity, follow the steps below.

1. Click the **Configuration Wizard** icon on the **STDM Plugin** menu to open the **Configuration Wizard** window as illustrated below.

	Configuration	Wizard	lcon														
		/															
Inform	nal_Settlement 🔻 📗	<b>ت</b> ې ا		S	Ē	8	<b>[</b> ]	->	÷	Ś	έŢ	ſ	ô	2	0	←	STDM Plugin Men

2. When the **Configuration Wizard** window opens, click the *Next* button on the wizard **Navigation Bar (once)** to access the **Profile Page**.

3. From **Profile Select** drop down, choose a **Profile** you want to customize as shown below.

Profile	
Select	Informal_Settlement 👻
Description:	Informal_Settlement Local_Government
	Rural Agriculture

4. All the related entities, lookups and lookup values for the selected profile should load onto various pages of the wizard.

5. Click **Next** button on the **Navigation Bar** to access the **Entity Customisation** page illustrated below.

onfiguration Wizard ntity Customization Add or edit entity columns, lookups and lookup value	s			8
Entities	-Col	lumns		
Person Structure		Þ 🖉 🔟		
		Name	Data Type	Description
	1	code	Varchar	The unique identifier of the structure
	2	name	Varchar	User friendly name of the structure
	3	ownership_type	Lookup	The ownership type of the structure
	4	related_structures	Multiple_select	Related structures within the structure
	5	recognition_status	Lookup	Recognition status of the structure by authorities
	6	utilities	Multiple_select	Utilities available in the structure
Lookups Viewer	7	spatial_geometry	Geometry	Lookup Values Viewer f the structure
Lookups check social_tenure_relationship_document_type check_tenure_type check_person_document_type check_gender check_gender check_marital_status check_household_relation check_related_structures check_related_structures check_related_structures check_relation_status check_utilities		Te Su Re Fri Re Fri Re Re		

6. On the **Lookups Viewer** section, click the **Add** button on the **Action Toolbar** as shown below.



7. A **Lookup Entity** window will open with a single field to enter a lookup name as shown below.

🕺 Lookup en	tity 💡 🔀
	`check_` prefix will be appended on the lookup name
Lookup Name	Enter lookup name
	OK Cancel

8. Enter the lookup name on the field provided.

The following are things to remember when entering a lookup name.

- Lookup names are all in lower case letters.
- Spaces within a lookup name are not allowed. All spaces will automatically be converted to an underscore (\_) character. For example, 'marital status' will be 'marital\_status'
- A prefix '*check\_*' is appended on every lookup name. For example, if you create a lookup with name '*gender*', the name will be saved as '*check\_gender*'.

9. To save your lookup and close the **Lookup Editor**, click the **OK** button. To abort the creation process and close the **Lookup Editor**, click the **Cancel** button.

10. If creating and saving of lookup was successful, the new lookup will show on the **Lookups Viewer**.

11. Now you can proceed to <u>Creating Values</u> section to add values to this lookup.

#### **Important Notes**

Note 1: When you create a new profile, two lookup entities are created automatically. These are:

- 1. check\_social\_tenure\_relationship\_document\_type
- 2. check\_tenure\_type

**Note 2:** You cannot proceed to the next step of the wizard if a lookup you have created has no values.

# **Editing Lookups**

To edit the lookups, follow the steps below.

1. Click the **Configuration Wizard** icon on the **STDM Plugin Menu** to open the **Configuration Wizard** window.



2. When the **Configuration Wizard** window opens, click the **Next** button on the wizard **Navigation Bar (once)** to access the **Profile Page**.

3. From **Profile Select** drop down, choose a **Profile** you want to customize.

Profile		
Select	Informal_Settlement	•
Description:	Informal_Settlement Local_Government Rural_Agriculture	

4. All the related entities, lookups and lookup values for the selected profile should load onto various pages of the wizard.

5. Click the **Next** button on the **Navigation Bar** to access the **Entity Customisation** page.

6. On the **Lookups Viewer Section**, click to select a lookup you want to edit.

7. Once a lookup is selected, click the **Edit** button on the **Action Toolbar** of the **Lookups Viewer** as shown below.

Lookups 2. Click Edit Button	3. Lookup Editor -Edit Lookup
check_social_tenure_relationship_document_type check_tenure_type check_person_document_type <del>check_structure_document_type</del>	Lookup entity
check_gender check_marital_status check_household_relation check_ownership_type check_related_structures check_recognition1. Select Lookup to Edit	`check_` prefix will be appended on the lookup name Lookup Name check_gender OK Cancel
check_utilities	

8. **Lookup Editor** will open with the **Lookup Name** field pre-populated with the name of the selected lookup as shown in the image above.

9. Edit the Lookup Name field.

10. To save your changes and close the **Lookup Editor**, click the **OK** button. To abort the edit action and close the editor, click the **Cancel** button.

11. If you saved your edits, changes should now reflect on the **Lookups Viewer**.

## **Deleting Lookups**

To delete a lookup entity from a profile, follow the steps below.

1. Click the **Configuration Wizard** icon on the **STDM Plugin Menu** to open the **Configuration Wizard** window.



2. When the **Configuration Wizard** window opens, click the **Next** button on the wizard **Navigation Bar (once)** to access the **Profile** page.

3. From **Profile Select** drop down, choose the **Profile** you want to customize as shown in the image below.

Profile	
Select	Informal_Settlement
Description:	Informal_Settlement Local_Government Rural_Agriculture

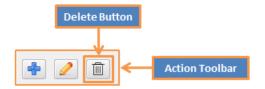
4. All the related entities, lookups and lookup values for the selected profile should load on various pages of the wizard.

5. Click Next button on the Navigation Bar to access the Entity Customisation page.

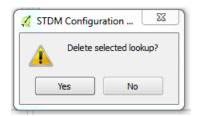
6. On the **Lookups Viewer Section**, click to select a lookup you want to delete as illustrated in the image below.

Lookups	Values
🖶 🥒 🔟	🕂 🥒 🔟
check_social_tenure_relationship_document_type	
check tenure_type check gender	

7. On the **Lookups Section**, click the **Delete** button on the **Action Toolbar** as shown below.



8. A warning window will pop up to ask you to confirm the delete action as shown below.



9. If you click **Yes**, the selected lookup will be deleted from the profile. However, if you click **No**, the warning window will close and nothing will happen.

**Note:** The system does not allow you to delete a lookup that is been used by other entities. You will get an error message, shown below, when you attempt to delete such a lookup.

🐔 STDM	22
	Cannot delete 'in_check_gender' lookup! Lookup is been used by existing columns.
	ОК

# **Configuring Lookup Values**

# **Creating Values**

A lookup value represents the actual data that is stored in a lookup entity. For example, a lookup entity *check\_gender*, values stored would be '*Female'* and 'Male'.

To create a lookup value, follow the steps below.

1. Click the **Configuration Wizard** icon on the **STDM Plugin Menu** to open the **Configuration Wizard** window as shown below.

	Configurat	ion V	Vizard	lcon													
		$\checkmark$															
Inform	mal_Settlement 💌		¢°		S	E	8	<b>[</b> 2]	->Ī	÷	١. ۲	E	69	?	0	←	STDM Plugin

2. When the **Configuration Wizard** window opens, click the **Next** button on the wizard **Navigation Bar (once)** to access the **Profile** page.

3. From **Profile Select** drop down, choose the **Profile** you want to customize as shown below.

Profile	
Select	Informal_Settlement
Description:	Informal_Settlement Local_Government Rural_Agriculture

4. All the related entities, lookups and lookup values for the selected profile should load on various pages of the wizard.

5. Click the Next button on the Navigation Bar to access the Entity Customisation page.

6. On the **Lookups Viewer Section**, click to select a lookup you want to add values as shown below.

		Lookup V	alues Viewer/	
-Lookups	Values			
🖶 🥒 🔟	+ 🦉 🗊	] .	l	
check_social_tenure_relationship_document_type				
check gender				

7. On the Values section, click the Add button on the Action Toolbar.

Add Button		
🖉 💼	←	Action Toolbar

8. A Lookup Values Editor will open as shown in the image below.

🕺 Lookup va	lue	9	23
Value Name	Enter lookup value		
Code			
	ОК	Cano	el

9. Enter your data on the following fields.

**Value Name** - A mandatory field for value name, this field must be provided before saving the value. Example of a *Value Name* for a lookup *check\_gender* would be '*Female*'

**Code** - A short character string that can be used in place of a value name. For example, for value '*Female*' the code would be '*F*', value '*Male*' code would be '*M*'.

10. When you are done entering the data, click the **OK** button to save and close the editor window. If you wish to abort the creation process, click the **Cancel** button.

11. If you saved your new value, it should now appear on the Lookup Values Viewer section.

# **Editing Values**

To edit a lookup value, follow the steps below.

1. Click the **Configuration Wizard** icon on the **STDM Plugin Menu** to open the **Configuration Wizard** window.

	Configurat	ion V	Vizard	lcon															
		<b>1</b>																	
Inform	nal_Settlement 🔻		¢°		<b>S</b>	E	8	<b>[</b> ?]	<b>→</b> Σ	÷Ĩ	Â	έą	E	<del>(</del> )	?	i	←	STDM Plugin M	le

2. When the **Configuration Wizard** window opens, click the *Next* button on the wizard **Navigation Bar (once)** to access the **Profile** page.

3. From **Profile Select** drop down, choose the **Profile** you want to customize as shown below.

Profile	
Select	Informal_Settlement
Description:	Informal_Settlement Local_Government Rural_Agriculture

4. All the related entities, lookups and lookup values for the selected profile should load on various pages of the wizard.

5. Click the **Next** button on the **Navigation Bar** to access the **Entity Customization** page.

6. On the **Lookups Viewer Section**, click to select a lookup. If there are values already available for the selected lookup, they will be displayed on the **Lookup Values Viewer**.

7. Select the lookup value you want to edit.

8. On the Action Tool bar of the Lookup Values Viewer section, click the Edit button.

	3. Click Edit Button
Lookups  Check_social_tenure_relationship_document_type  check_tenure_type  check_person_document_type  check_gender  check_mannai_status	Values Female Value Value 2. Select Lookup Value
check_household_relation check_ownership_type check_related_structures check_recognition_status check_utilities	

9. The **Lookup Value Editor** will open with fields pre-populated with values from the selected lookup value as indicated below.

🍕 Lookup va	lue ? X
Value Name	Female
Code	F
	OK Cancel

10. Make your changes.

11. Once done, click the **OK** button to save your edits and close the **Lookup Value Editor**. However, if you wish to abort the edit process and close the editor, click the **Cancel** button.

12. If you edited the **Value Name**, the changes should now reflect on the **Lookup Values Viewer**.

### **Deleting Values**

To remove a lookup value from a lookup entity, follow the steps below.

1. Click the **Configuration Wizard** icon on the **STDM Plugin Menu** to open the **Configuration Wizard** window.



2. When the **Configuration Wizard** window opens, click the *Next* button on the wizard **Navigation Bar (once)** to access the **Profile** page.

3. From **Profile Select** drop down, choose the **Profile** you want to customize as shown below.

Profile	
Select	Informal_Settlement
Description:	Informal_Settlement Local_Government Rural_Agriculture

4. All the related entities, lookups and lookup values for the selected profile should load on various pages of the wizard.

5. Click the **Next** button on the **Navigation Bar** to access the **Entity Customization** page.

6. On the **Lookups Viewer Section**, click to select a lookup. If there are lookup values already available for the selected lookup, they will be displayed on the **Lookup Values Viewer**.

7. Select the lookup value you want to edit.

8. On the **Action Toolbar** of the **Lookup Values** Viewer section, click the **Delete** button as shown in the image below.

	3. Click Delete Button
Lookups	
check_social_tenure_relationship_document_type         check_tenure_type         check_person_document_type         check_orender         check_nousehold_relation         check_related_structures         check_recognition_status         1. Select Lookup	Female Male 2. Select Lookup Value

9. The lookup value will immediately be removed from the list of values.

#### **Re-ordering Values**

After creating lookup values for the first time on a **Lookup Entity**, it is possible to re-arrange the order on which they appear on the **Lookup Values Viewer**.

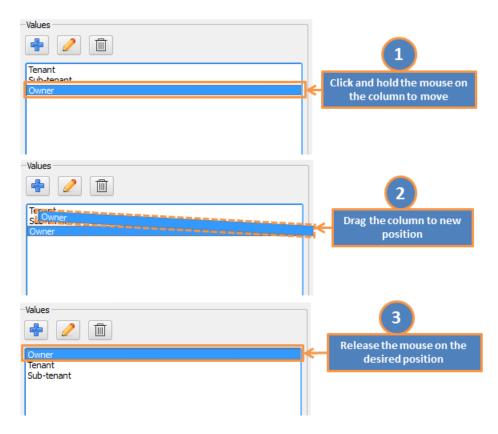
To re-order the **Values** on the **Lookup Values Viewer**, follow the steps below.

1. Create lookup values on a **Lookup** as illustrated in <u>Creating Values</u> section.

2. On the **Lookup Values Viewer** click and hold the mouse (left mouse button) on the value you wish to move.

3. Now drag the value to a different position on the list of values.

4. Release the mouse on the new position. These steps have been illustrated below.

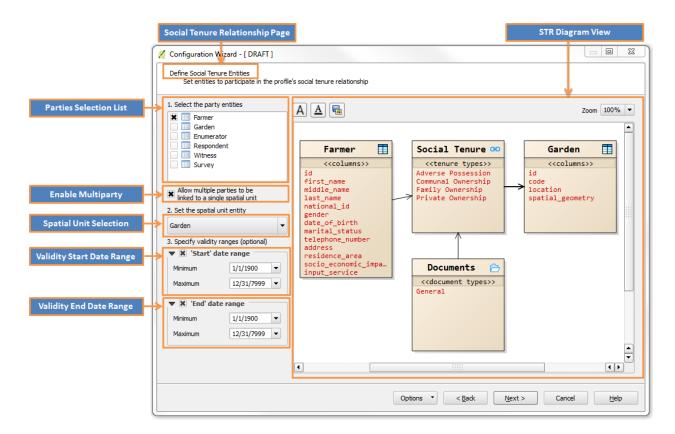


5. Your value should now be in a new position.

## **Defining Social Tenure Relationship Entities**

### **STR Overview**

The Social Tenure Relationship page has been revamped to allow users define social tenure relationships in a more versatile manner than before. The page has been divided into different sections as shown in the image below.



#### Sections:

I. Parties Selection - A check box list to select party entities that will participate in the STR.

II. Multiple party selection check box - Check box to enable or disable multiple parties to be linked to a single spatial unit.

III. Spatial Unit selection combo box - A selection combo box for spatial unit.

IV. Validity Start Date Range - Section to select a valid start date range for a social tenure.

V. Validity End Date Range - Section to select a valid end date range for a social tenure.

VI. STR Diagram - A diagram showing a visual representation of the STR.

#### **Selecting Party and Spatial Unit Entity**

Party entity in a social tenure relationship represents a person or organization that plays a role in rights transaction. An organization can be a company, municipality, state, tribe, farmer cooperation or even a community.

Spatial Unit entity in a social tenure relationship represents a single area (or multiple areas) of land and/or water. In STDM, it is a prerequisite for an entity representing a spatial unit to have at least one geometry column.

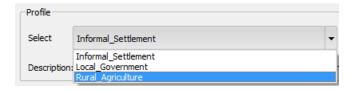
To select **Party** and **Spatial Unit** entities for **Social Tenure Relationship**, follow the steps below.

1. Click the **Configuration Wizard** icon on the **STDM Plugin Menu** to open the **Configuration Wizard** window.



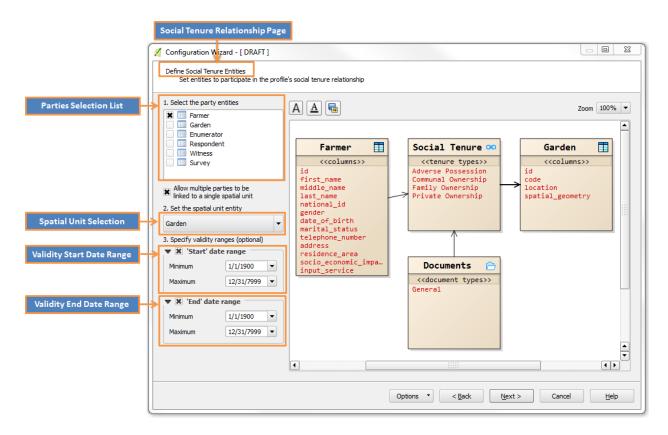
2. When the **Configuration Wizard** window opens, click the **Next** button on the wizard **Navigation Bar (once)** to access the **Profile** page.

3. From **Profile Select** drop down, choose the **Profile** you want to customize as shown below.



4. All the related **Entities**, **Lookups**, **Lookup values** and **Social Tenure Relationship** tables for the selected profile should load on various pages of the wizard.

5. Click **Next** button on the **Navigation Bar (twice)** to access the **Defining Social Tenure Entities** page as indicated in the image below.



6. To define a party or multiple parties for STR, click on the check box next to an entity in the **Party Entities Selection** list box.

7. To define the **Spatial Unit Entity**, click the **Spatial Unit Entity** combo box to choose from the drop down list. The entity you select for this option **must** have a **Geometry** column defined for it.

The STR module now allows you to set a valid date for a social tenure. The tenure can have a start and end date. To set this validity dates follow the steps below.

8. To set a **Start validity date**, click on the Minimum and Maximum date selection control to choose a date in the **Start** date range box.

9. To set an **End validity date** for a social tenure, click the Minimum and Maximum date selection control to choose a date in the 'End' date range box

10. Once you make your selections, click the **Next** button to proceed to the last page of the wizard.

#### **Important Notes**

Note 1: Party and Spatial Unit entities should not be the same.

**Note 2:** The **Spatial Unit** entity **must** have one **Geometry** column defined to qualify as a spatial unit entity.

### Setting One or More Parties per Spatial Unit

Ideally, Social Tenure Relationship is defined by two entities - Party entity and a Spatial Unit entity. To allow multiple parties to share a single spatial unit, for example, different persons sharing land rights to a single plot, follow the steps below.

# 1. Click the **Configuration Wizard** icon on the **STDM Plugin Menu** to open the **Configuration Wizard** window.



2. When the **Configuration Wizard** window opens, click the **Next** button on the wizard **Navigation Bar (once)** to access the **Profile** page.

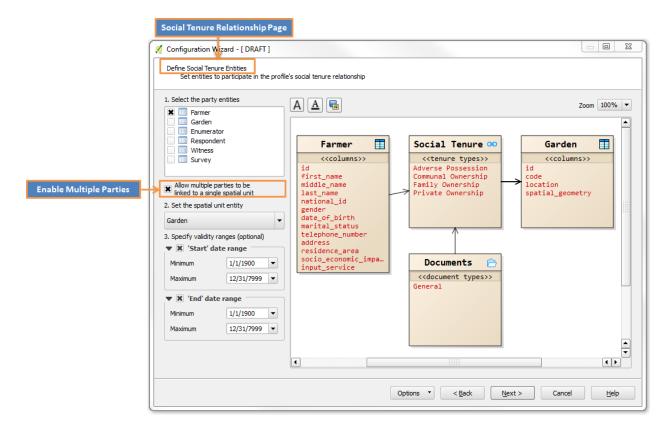
3. From **Profile Select** drop down, shown in the image below, choose the **Profile** you want to customize.

Profile	
Select	Informal_Settlement
Description:	Informal_Settlement Local_Government Rural_Agriculture

4. All the related **Entities, Lookups, Lookup values** and **Social Tenure Relationship** tables for the selected profile should load on various pages of the wizard.

5. Click the **Next** button on the **Navigation Bar (twice)** to access the **Defining Social Tenure Tables** page.

6. Click on the check box titled **Allow multiple parties to be linked to a single spatial unit** below the **Party Selection List Box** as shown in the image below.



7. Once checked, click *Next* button to proceed.

## Save Configuration to Database

For all your profile customisation to be stored permanently, they must be saved in the database. This process involves translating all profile **Entities** and **Lookups** that are created on the **Configuration Wizard** into physical database tables and database views in the STDM database.

To save your configuration changes to the database, follow the steps below.

1. Click the **Configuration Wizard** icon on the **STDM Plugin Menu** to open the **Configuration Wizard** window.



2. When the **Configuration Wizard** window opens, click the **Next** button on the wizard **Navigation Bar (once)** to access the **Profile** page.

3. From **Profile Select** drop down, shown in the image below, choose the **Profile** you want to customize.

Profile		
Select	Informal_Settlement	
Description:	Informal_Settlement Local_Government Rural_Agriculture	

4. All the related **Entities, Lookups, Lookup values and Social Tenure Relationship** tables for the selected profile should load on various pages of the wizard.

5. Perform any necessary customisation.

6. Click the **Next** button on the **Navigation Bar** until you get to the **Save Configuration** page as shown in the image below.

Save Configuration Page	Saving Progress Window
Configuration Wizard	8 X
Save configuration Click finish to save changes in your configuration to the database.	
Save status will be displayed in the window below.	
	< Back Finish Cancel Help Click Finish Button to Save Configuration

7. To save your configuration, click the **Finish** button.

8. Saving progress activity will show on the **Saving Progress** window.

Save Configuration Page	Window Shows Sav	ing Progress Activity	
🔏 Config ration Wizard			? ×
Save configuration Click finish to save changes in your configuration to the database.			
Save status will be displayed in the window below.		1	
Creating social_tenure_relationship_supporting_document entry Creating supporting_document entity Creating social_tenure_relationship entity Creating deck_farme_document_type entity Creating deck_garden_document_type entity Creating deck_garden_document_type entity Creating check_garden_document_type entity Creating check_garden_document_type entity Creating check_garden_document_type entity Creating check_garden_tocument_type entity Creating check_respondent_document_type entity Creating check_respondent_document_type entity Creating check_respondent_tocument_type entity Creating check_respondent_tocument_type entity Creating check_icapporting_entity Creating check_icapporting_document entity Creating check_rank entity Creating Garden_supporting_document entity Creating Garden_supporting_document entity Creating Barmer_supporting_document entity Creating Respondent_supporting_document entity Creating Respondent_supporting_document entity Creating Respondent_supporting_document entity Creating Respondent_supporting_document entity Creating Respondent_entity Creating Respondent_entity Creating Witness_supporting_document entity Creating Witness_supporting_document entity Creating Priority entity Creating Impact entity Creating Survey entity			
	< Back	Finish Clos	e Help
			`]

Click Close Button To Exit Wizard

9. If saving is successful, click the **Close** button to exit the **Configuration Wizard** window.

#### **Important Notes**

**Note 1:** An error message will be shown in **red** font in the **Progress Activity** window if the **Configuration Wizard** encounters an error during the saving process.

**Note 2:** To prevent you from accidently losing your work (if you had done any changes on any profile), a warning message will popup when you click the **Cancel** button on the Navigation Bar of the **Configuration Wizard** as shown in the image below.



# **Managing Entity Data**

At the heart of STDM lies the flexibility to manage tenure data such as administrative units, entities, spatial data, and social tenure relationships. The following sub topics guide you on how to manage tenure data that leads to a successful implementation of a flexible Land Information System powered by STDM.

## **Managing Administrative Unit**

Administrative units are set up on a hierarchical/cascade structure. For example, from country to province, then district, division and location. This could also be explained as a form of a parent unit to a child unit relationship.

**1.** To access the administrative unit management, click on its button on the tool bar shown in a red box below.



The **Administrative Units Viewer** displays to enable adding new administrative units as shown in the image below.

🕺 Administrative Units Viev	wer ? ×
Name	Code
😣 Delete Selection	n 🖸 Clear Selection
New Administrative Unit:	
Unit Name	1 Code 2
	Close

A sample of Administrative units prepared is shown below.

🔏 Administrat	ive Units Viewer	?
E Cent	obi Provicne Westlands tral Provicne Kiambu	Code KE NBI WEST CP KMB
😢 D	elete Selection	▲ Clear Selection
	strative Unit: Eastern province	Code EP
		Close

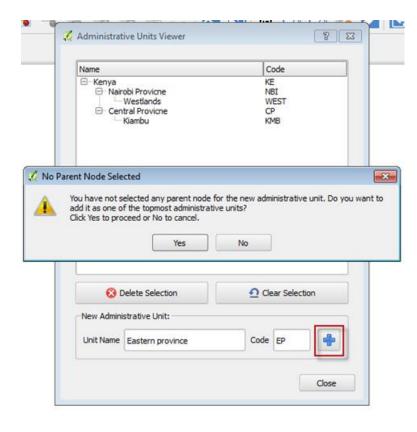
**2.** To set up a new administrative unit, type down its name and on the unit name field and its code on the code field.

The system sets a new unit as a parent unit if no existing unit is selected during a new unit creation.

If an already created unit is selected during creation of a new unit, the new unit will be the child unit and will appear below the selected unit.

**3.** If user intends to create a new parent unit when an already created unit is selected on the cascading view, click on the **Clear Selection**, button on the management wizard to reset selection.

**4.** Next, click on the **Add** button ( ) shown in a red box below to enter the new unit name and code.



An alert message appears showing that the current unit will be a parent unit. To proceed, click **Yes**.

#### **Deleting an Administrative Unit**

The Administrative Units Viewer also has the option of deleting a unit.

**1.** To do this select on an intended unit on the unit cascade and click on **delete** selection.

If the selected unit is a parent unit, the delete action will erase the unit and its children unit(s) below it. The image below illustrates how to select an intended unit on the unit.

Please select the administrativ	
Name	Code
Kenya     Nairobi Provicne     Westlands     Central Provicne     Kiambu     Eastern Province     Machakos	NBI WEST CP KMB EP MC
S Delete Selection	Clear Selection

## **Managing Entities**

Entity in STDM refers to a database table in which a specific data is stored. Examples of entity in STDM include person, party, parcel, etc.

Each entity has an **Entity Browser** that loads any existing data from the database. The entity browser has buttons for adding, editing or deleting records (see the image below). You can also make searches based on searchable columns specified in the **Configuration Wizard**. An entity browser looks like the image below.

_	First Name /	Middle Name	Last Name	National ID	Gender	Date 0
1	Alice	Akeno	Туа	3454364	Female (F)	11/22/65
2	Clement	Echoto	Peter	6785678	Male (M)	11/20/65
3	David	Enyaman	Ewoton	7686587	Male (M)	11/19/65
4	James		Mucheni	686786	Male (M)	11/21/65
5	Peter	L.	Emeri	342214	Male (M)	11/23/65

Entity Browser Tool buttons

+- Add Records (Not available for spatial entities - to add a spatial record, you have to digitize a feature or import a record)

🥒 - Edit Record

🕸- Delete Record

Image: Provide the second s

**Managing Entities** refers to the process of adding, querying, editing and deleting records. The next sub-topics elaborate how to add, edit and delete records.

**Note:** The tool buttons at the top may vary depending on the entity.

#### **Adding a Record**

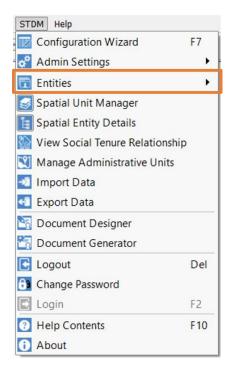
Adding a record from Entity browser is possible for non-spatial entities. As spatial entities have geometry, a geometry needs to be digitized and an attribute data needs to be appended with the geometry once the digitalization is finished. To add a spatial entity record, by digitalization read <u>Digitizing in a Spatial Entity Layer</u> topic.

To add a new record, follow the steps below.

1. Go to the STDM Toolbar and click on **Entities** menu as illustrated in the image below.



You can also click on **STDM Menu** located under **QGIS Menu** and click on the Entities sub-menu as show in the image below to find the Entities sub-menu.



2. Open any Entity Browser you wish to view with the exception of New Social Tenure Relationship.



3. The Entity Browser of the entity you have selected loads a table similar to the one shown below. If you have not added any record, the table will be empty.

	First Name /	Middle Name	Last Name	National ID	Gender	Date 0
1	Alice	Akeno	Туа	3454364	Female (F)	11/22/65
2	Clement	Echoto	Peter	6785678	Male (M)	11/20/65
3	David	Enyaman	Ewoton	7686587	Male (M)	11/19/65
4	James		Mucheni	686786	Male (M)	11/21/65
5	Peter	L.	Emeri	342214	Male (M)	11/23/65

4. Click on **Add** button as shown in the picture below.

	First Name 🦯	Middle Name	Last Name	National ID	Gender	Date C
1	Alice	Akeno	Туа	3454364	Female (F)	11/22/65
2	Clement	Echoto	Peter	6785678	Male (M)	11/20/65
3	David	Enyaman	Ewoton	7686587	Male (M)	11/19/65
4	James		Mucheni	686786	Male (M)	11/21/65
5	Peter	L.	Emeri	342214	Male (M)	11/23/65

5. A pop-up dialog appears with a form (see the image below).

#### Primary Form Tab

Ø	Person Rec	🧕 Person Editor		?	×		×
4	0	Primary Suppo	orting Documents				
	First Name	First Name			0		Date Of
1	Alice	Middle Name			0	10/2	28/80
2	Clement	Last Name				10/2	28/65
3	David	National ID			0	10/2	26/80
4	James	Gender			0	10/2	25/80
5	Peter	Date Of Birth	2/4/2017	•		10/2	27/80
		Marital Status			0		
		Household Relation		•	0		
		Telephone Number			0		
•		Address			] 🕕 📗		••
Loo	ok For Type	Residence Area		ła	0	e	•
			Save Save and New	Cance	el	Clo	ose

#### Supporting Documents Tab

💋 Person R	ea 🦸 Person Editor 🤉 🗙	
+ 🧷 😣	Primary Supporting Documents	
First Na	e Select document type Photo   Add document	Date Of
1 Alice	Photo Identification Card	10/28/80
2 Clement		10/28/65
3 David		10/26/80
4 James		10/25/80
5 Peter		10/27/80
Look For Typ	Save Save and New Cancel	e v Close

6. Fill out the form under the Primary tab.

5. If the entity does not have supporting document option, click on the **Save** button. Otherwise, proceed to the topic Uploading Supporting Documents without saving.

If the form is properly entered, a success message pops up, as shown below.

🧕 Reco	ord Saved X
1	New record has been successfully saved.
	ОК

#### **Uploading Supporting Documents**

If an entity is supporting documents enabled, which can be activated in the <u>Configuration Wizard</u> <u>Entities</u> page, uploading supporting documents is possible.

If you have more than one document type, a tab will be created. You can click on the tabs or the drop down menu to upload the documents.

To upload a supporting document, follow the sub-steps below.

1. Choose on the document types by clicking on the tabs or the drop down menu. Then, click on the **Add Supporting Document** button as shown below.

💋 Person Rec	🥂 Person Editor	?	×		×
🕂 🧷 😣	Primary Supporting Documents				
First Name	Select document type Photo	d docume	nt		Date Of
1 Alice	Photo Identification Card		1	10/	28/80
2 Clement				10/	28/65
3 David	Select a Document Type	Add a	a docum	ient	26/80
4 James				10/	25/80
5 Peter				10/	27/80
Look For Type				e	••
	Save Save and New	Cano	cel	Cl	ose

2. Choose a file to be uploaded by looking for the files in your Windows Explorer and then click the **Open** button as shown below.

	🥢 🖉 Person Editor	?	x ⊨		
🥡 Select General Supportin	ng Documents				×
$\leftarrow$ $\rightarrow$ $\checkmark$ $\uparrow$ $\blacksquare$ $\rightarrow$ Th	nis PC > Documents > docments		~ Ū	Search docments	٩
Organize 🔻 New folde	er				
S This PC	Certificate1.png	photo.png			
📙 Desktop					
Documents					
🔈 Downloads					
🐌 Music					
🔚 Pictures					
Videos					
🐛 Local Disk (C:)					
🧼 Data (D:)					
🔮 CD Drive (E:)					
HP_TOOLS (F:)					
🔮 CD Drive (G:) 🗸					
File nar	me: photo.png		~	Supporting Document	ts (*.jpg *.  ×
				Open	Cancel

Ø	Person Rec	📢 Person Editor ? X		×
4	First Name	Primary Supporting Documents Select document type Photo		Date Of
H	Alice	Photo Identification Card		10/28/80
2	Clement David		-	10/28/65
4	James			10/25/80
5	Peter	photo.png (117K)		10/27/80
Loc	ok For Type		e	<b>ب</b>
		Save Save and New Cancel		Close

You will be able see the uploaded file added in the tab you have uploaded to, as shown below.

You can view the documents by clicking on the file name. If needed, you can remove the documents by clicking on the Remove icon ( $\otimes$ ) on each Document bars.

3. Click on the **Save** button. If the form is properly entered, a success message pops up, as shown below.

🧕 Reco	ord Saved X
1	New record has been successfully saved.
	ОК

A new record will be added in the Entity Browser and you can see it added as a row.

#### **Adding Multiple Records**

Adding multiple records might be a bit time consuming. This is because, after saving a record using the **Save** button, it was required to click on two buttons to access the entity editor to add another record. In STDM 1.5, this issue is solved with the addition of the **Save and New** button. The button does the same thing as the **Save** button but reloads the form without showing a success message. To continue adding several records click on the **Save and New** button as highlighted in the image below.

💋 Person Red	🤨 Person Editor	?	×	
First Name First Name Alice Clement David James Feter	Primary       Supporting Documents         First Name		000000000000000000000000000000000000000	Date Of 10/28/80 10/28/65 10/26/80 10/25/80 10/27/80
Look For Type	Marital Status Household Relation Telephone Number Address Residence Area Save Save Save and New			e  Close

#### Adding a Record Using a Subform

A **Subform** is a form that is inserted in another form. The main form is called **Primary** form, and the form that is enclosed in **Primary** form is called **Subform**. A form/subform combination is sometimes referred to as a hierarchical form, a master-detail form, or a parent-child form.

When you create your profile, there might be cases when one **Entity** is related to another **Entity**. For instance, you may have an entity called **Person** that contains information about an individual. However, there might be another **Entity** called **Household** that contains a general information about the whole family. In this case, you can link the **Person Entity** to the **Household Entity** using the **Related Entity** column discussed in <u>Understanding Column Data Types</u> topic. When you link two **Entities** a **Subform** is created in the parent **Entity** form. In this case, in the **Household Entity** form a **Subform** for the **Person Entity** is created. Consequently, after adding a record in the **Primary** form, you can also add a record using the **Subform**, which in this case will enable you to add a record for the **Person Entity**.

The **Subform** in STDM data entry form is created in a tab next to the **Primary** tab with the name of the child Entity follow by the word **Collection**. If the child **Entity** is **Person**, the **Subform** is called **Person Collection**.

To add a record using Subform, follow the steps below.

1. Add a record into the **Primary** form using the steps discussed in <u>Adding a Record</u> topic.

2. Locate the **Subform** tab by looking for a tab containing the Entity name followed by Collection. The image below shows a **Farmer Collection** tab which is a **Subform** of **Household Entity**.

Ø	Household	🦸 Household Editor ? 🗙	
÷	2 🛛 🛛	Primary Farmer Collection Household income Collecti	]
	Household	+ 🦉 😣	usehold Vicinit
1	KYG/006	Farmer Number / First Name Last Name I	arden
2	KYG/007		arden
3	KYG/008		from the Garc
4	KYG/011		Garden
5	KYG/012		arden
6	KYG/013		from the Garc
7	KYG/014		Garden
8	KYG/015		Garden ▼
Loo	k For Type th	Look For Type the filter k In Column Farmer Number	mber 🔻
		Save Save and New Cancel	Close

3. Click on the **Add** button (+) as shown in the image below.

Ø	Household	🤨 Household Editor ? X	
÷	2 🛛 [	Primary Farmer Collection Household income Collecti	]
	Household	🖶 🥒 😣	usehold Vicinit
1	KYG/006	Farmer Number / First Name Last Name I	arden
2	KYG/007		arden
3	KYG/008		from the Garc
4	KYG/011		Garden
5	KYG/012		arden
6	KYG/013		from the Garc
7	KYG/014		Garden
8	KYG/015	Look For Type the filter k In Column Farmer Number	Garden 👻
Loo	k For Type th		mber 🔻
		Save Save and New Cancel	Close

4. The Subform appears as shown in the image below. Fill out the form and click on the Save button. This will save the record temporarily and also added in the **Subform Entity Browser**. It will be saved permanently when you also save the Primary form.

Househo   Househo   1   KYG/006   2   KYG/007   3   KYG/008   4   KYG/009   6   5   KYG/011   6   KYG/012   7   KYG/013   8   KYG/014   4   Look For Type <b>Auditess Auditess Lock Auditess Household Auditess Auditess</b>	<b>Ø</b>	Household	2 20 F	🧭 Farmer Editor ? X	×	
Image: Second and the second and th	1 2	Househo KYG/006 KYG/007	_	Primary Supporting Documents Farmer Number First Name Last Name		Garden 🗰 Garden
	5 6 7 8 4	KYG/011 KYG/012 KYG/013 KYG/014		Date Of Birth 3/9/2017   Marital Status Contact Number Address Respondent Role	Ë.	n Garden Garden ht from the Garc

5. You can also upload supporting documents and add more records by clicking on the Save and New button.

6. Once you have completed adding records in the **Subforms**, save the primary form by clicking on the **Save** button. This will also save the **Subforms**.

If the forms are properly entered, a success message pops up, as shown below.

🧕 Reco	ord Saved X
1	New record has been successfully saved.
	ОК

A new record will be added in the Entity Browser and you can see it added as a row.

## **Querying a Record**

In addition to adding records, the Entity Browser enables you to search and find any data using filters. This capability makes it easy to find a record for information purpose, and to perform operations like editing, document viewing and deleting.

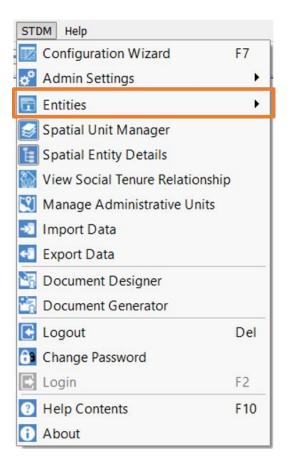
#### Searching

The steps below show how to search for data.

1. Go to the **STDM Toolbar** and click on **Entities** menu as illustrated in the image below.



You can also click on **STDM Menu** located under **QGIS Menu** and click on the Entities sub-menu as shown in the image below to find the Entities sub-menu.



2. Open any Entity Browser you wish to view with the exception of New Social Tenure Relationship.



3. The Entity Browser of the entity you have selected loads similar to the one shown below. If you have not added any record, the table will be empty.

	First Name /	Middle Name	Last Name	National ID	Gender	Date 0
1	Alice	Akeno	Туа	3454364	Female (F)	11/22/65
2	Clement	Echoto	Peter	6785678	Male (M)	11/20/65
3	David	Enyaman	Ewoton	7686587	Male (M)	11/19/65
4	James		Mucheni	686786	Male (M)	11/21/65
5	Peter	L.	Emeri	342214	Male (M)	11/23/65

2. In the Entity Browser, select the filter and enter a keyword to search for records as shown in the image below.

	First Name	Middle Name	Last Name	National ID	Gender	Date Of
1	Alice	Akeno	Туа	3454364	Female (F)	11/22/65
2	Clement	Echoto	Peter	6785678	Male (M)	11/20/65
3	David	Enyaman	Ewoton	7686587	Male (M)	11/19/65
4	James		Mucheni	686786	Male (M)	11/21/65
5	Mark		Johnston	46y536534	Male (M)	07/23/16
6	Peter	L.	Emeri	342214	Male (M)	11/23/65
				_	ſ	••
4		Iter keyword here		In Colum	First Name	1 ( ja)

3. Only the search result appears (see the image below). The filtered list will continue appearing until you clear the keyword.

🧕 Person Record	ds - 6 rows			— C	x נ
🕂 🥒 😣 🗎					
First Name	Middle Name	Last Name	National ID	Gender	Date Of
1 David	Enyaman	Ewoton	7686587	Male (M)	11/19/65
•					• •
ook For David			In Colum	First Name	
					Close
					Close

**Note**: To perform further operations such as editing, and deleting a record, you must select the record.

#### **Viewing a Supporting Document**

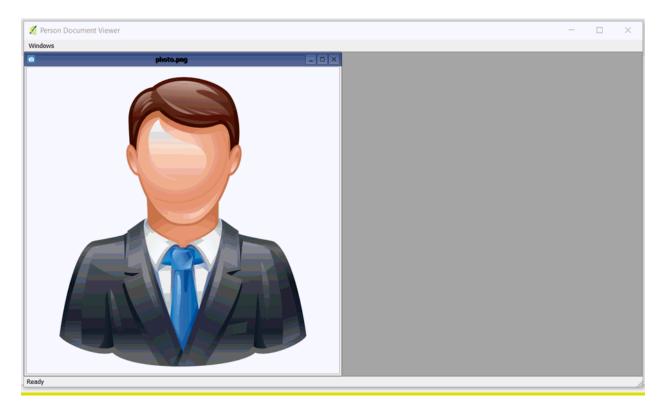
STDM provides a document viewer in which you can view supporting documents without going to the folder of the document, from within STDM.

To view a document, follow the steps below.

- 1. Search for a record from Entity Browser as explained in the preceding topic.
- 2. Select a record.
- 3. Click on the **View Document** icon as highlighted below.

🤨 Person Records -	6 rows			— C	) X
💠 🥒 😣 📄					
First Name $ riangle$	Middle Name	Last Name	National ID	Gender	Date Of
1 Mark		Johnston	46y536534	Male (M)	07/23/16
•					(
Look For Mar			In Column	First Name	
					Close

4. You can view the uploaded document as shown below.



You can resize and maximize the image if necessary.

### **Editing a Record**

Editing involves modifying the existing records using the form. You can modify any field you wish including supporting documents.

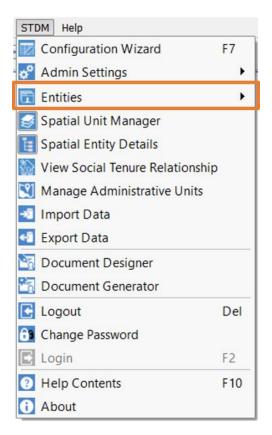
To edit a record, you need to first search for the record you wish to edit. The searching is especially useful when you have large number of records.

To edit a record, follow the steps below.

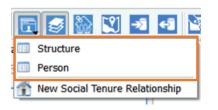
1. Go to the STDM Toolbar and click on **Entities** menu.



You can also click on **STDM Menu** located under **QGIS Menu** and click on the Entities sub-menu as shown in the image below to find the Entities sub-menu.



2. Open any Entity Browser you wish to view with the exception of New Social Tenure Relationship.



3. The **Entity Browser** of the entity you have selected loads similar to the one shown below.

	First Name /	Middle Name	Last Name	National ID	Gender	Date 0
1	Alice	Akeno	Туа	3454364	Female (F)	11/22/65
2	Clement	Echoto	Peter	6785678	Male (M)	11/20/65
3	David	Enyaman	Ewoton	7686587	Male (M)	11/19/65
4	James		Mucheni	686786	Male (M)	11/21/65
5	Peter	L.	Emeri	342214	Male (M)	11/23/65

2. In the **Entity Browser**, select the filter and enter text to search for a record as shown in the image below.

	First Name /	Middle Name	Last Name	National ID	Gender	Date Of	
1	Alice	Akeno	Туа	3454364	Female (F)	11/22/65	
2	Clement	Echoto	Peter	6785678	Male (M)	11/20/65	
3	David	Enyaman	Ewoton	7686587	Male (M)	11/19/65	
4	James		Mucheni	686786	Male (M)	11/21/65	
5	Mark		Johnston	46y536534	Male (M)	07/23/16	
6	Peter	L	Emeri	342214	Male (M)	11/23/65	
۹ Loo	-	filter keyword here		In Colur	nn First Name		

3. Only the search result appears (see the image below). The filtered list will appear until you clear the keyword.

Q	Person Records	- 6 rows			— C	) X
÷	2 😣 🗎					
	First Name $ riangle$	Middle Name	Last Name	National ID	Gender	Date Of
1	David	Enyaman	Ewoton	7686587	Male (M)	11/19/65
		7 F				( )
	k For David			In Colum		
100					n First Name	
						Close

2. As shown above, select a row/record you would like to edit and click on the **Edit** button as shown in the picture below or double click on the row you would like to edit.

Ģ	Perso	on Records	- 6 rows				— C	) X
0	+ 🖉	8						
	First	t Name $ riangle$	Middle Name	Last Name	National	ID	Gender	Date Of
1	L David		Enyaman	Ewoton	7686587	r	Male (M)	11/19/65
Lo	ook For	David			In	Column	First Name	•
								Close

3. A pop-up dialog appears with a form as shown below.

💋 Person Record	🧕 Person Editor	?	×		×
	Primary Suppo	orting Documents			
🕂 🧷 😣 🗈	First Name *	David	] 🕕		
First Name	Middle Name	Enyaman	] 🔒 📗	der	Date Of
1 David	Last Name	Ewoton	] 🔒 📗	1) :	11/19/65
	National ID	7686587	] 🛛 📗		
	Gender	Male	0		
	Date Of Birth	11/19/1965	0		
	Marital Status	Single	0		
	Household Relation	•	0		
	Telephone Number		] 🕕 📗		
	Address		] 🕕 📗		
	Residence Area	6	0		
Look For David				Name	-
	Please fill out all requ	iired (*) fields.	cel		Close

4. The Editor form loads the data of the selected record. Modify the form and supporting documents and click on the **Ok** button.

A success message (see the image below) pops up if the form is filled correctly.

😲 Reco	rd Updated	×
1	Record has been successful	lly updated.
	ОК	

After a success message has been displayed, the form hides and you can see the changes in Entity Browser.

#### **Editing a Record Using a Subform**

A **Subform** is a form that is inserted in another form. The main form is called **Primary** form, and the form that is enclosed in **Primary** form is called **Subform**. A form/subform combination is sometimes referred to as a hierarchical form, a master-detail form, or a parent-child form.

When you create your profile, there might be cases when one **Entity** is related to another **Entity**. For instance, you may have an entity called **Person** that contains information about an individual. However, there might be another **Entity** called **Household** that contains a general information about the whole family. In this case, you can link the **Person Entity** to the **Household Entity** using the **Related Entity** column discussed in <u>Understanding Column Data Types</u> topic. When you link two **Entities** a **Subform** is created in the parent **Entity** form. In this case, in the **Household Entity** form a **Subform** for the **Person Entity** is created. Consequently, after adding a record in the **Primary** form, you can also add a record using the **Subform**, which in this case will enable you to add a record for the **Person Entity**.

The **Subform** in STDM data entry form is created in a tab next to the **Primary** tab with the name of the child Entity follow by the word **Collection**. If the child **Entity** is **Person**, the **Subform** is called **Person Collection**.

To edit a record using Subform, follow the steps below.

1. Edit a record in the **Primary** form using the steps discussed in <u>Editing a Record</u> topic.

2. Locate the **Subform** tab by looking for a tab containing the Entity name followed by Collection. The image below shows a **Farmer Collection** tab which is a **Subform** of **Household Entity**. To edit a record, search and select a record and click on the **Edit** button (*P*) as shown in the image below.

	Household		lousehold Editor	tion Housebold	? d income Collecti	× □ ×
	Househok			Lion Nuserion		sehold Vicini
1	KYG/006		Farmer Number $igtriangleup$	First Name	Last Name	
2	KYG/007	1	A001	Max	Roy	arden
3	KYG/008	2	A002	Jean	Alex	from the Garc
ł	KYG/011	2	A002	Jean	Alex	Garden
	KYG/012					arden
	KYG/013					from the Garc
	KYG/014					Garden
	KYG/015	1	k For Type the filter k	In Column Farr		Garden
ok	For Type th					mber
				Save	Cance	el Close

3. The **Subform** loads with the selected record so that you can edit the record as shown in the image below. Update the form where necessary and click on the Save button. This will update the record temporarily and also added in the **Subform Entity Browser**.

Ø	Household	🧕 Farmer Edito	r	?	×		$\times$
ł	. 🦉 😣 🛙	Primary Sup	porting Documents			1	
	Househok	Farmer Number	A001		A	isehold V	∕icini≜
1	KYG/006	First Name	Max			arden	
2	KYG/007	Last Name	Roy			arden	
3	KYG/008	National ID	4949595			from the	Garc
4	KYG/011	Gender	Male			Garden	
5	KYG/012	Date Of Birth	3/6/1978	•		arden	
6	KYG/013	Marital Status	Married	•		from the	Garc
7	KYG/014	Contact Number	073337747			Garden	
8	KYG/015	Address				Garden	
		Respondent Role		-		•	
Loo	k For Type th	Household	VVC/015		J	mber	•
			Save	Cance	el	Clos	se

4. Once you have completed updating records in the **Subforms**, save the primary form by clicking on the **Save** button. This will also save the **Subforms**.

If the forms are properly entered, a success message pops up, as shown below.

🤨 Rec	ord Updated	×
i	Record has been successfully	v updated.
	ОК	

The existing record will be updated in the Entity Browser and you can see the change.

### **Deleting a Record**

You can completely delete a record and its associated supporting documents. Once, a record is deleted, it **cannot** be restored. Make sure that you do not need the record before deleting.

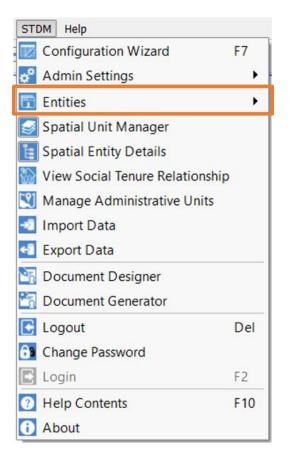
To delete a record, you need to first search for the record you wish to delete. The searching of the record is especially useful when you have large number of records.

To delete a record, follow the steps below.

1. Go to the STDM Toolbar and click on **Entities** menu.



You can also click on STDM Menu located under QGIS Menu and click on the **Entities** sub-menu as show in the image below to find the Entities sub-menu.



2. Open any **Entity Browser** you wish to view with the exception of **New Social Tenure Relationship** as shown in the image below.



3. The **Entity Browser** of the entity you have selected loads similar to the one shown below.

	First Name /	Middle Name	Last Name	National ID	Gender	Date 0
1	Alice	Akeno	Туа	3454364	Female (F)	11/22/65
2	Clement	Echoto	Peter	6785678	Male (M)	11/20/65
3	David	Enyaman	Ewoton	7686587	Male (M)	11/19/65
4	James		Mucheni	686786	Male (M)	11/21/65
5	Peter	L.	Emeri	342214	Male (M)	11/23/65

4. In the **Entity Browser**, select the filter and enter text to search for a record as shown in the image below.

	First Name /	Middle Name	Last Name	National ID	Gender	Date Of
1	Alice	Akeno	Туа	3454364	Female (F)	11/22/65
2	Clement	Echoto	Peter	6785678	Male (M)	11/20/65
3	David	Enyaman	Ewoton	7686587	Male (M)	11/19/65
4	James		Mucheni	686786	Male (M)	11/21/65
5	Mark		Johnston	46y536534	Male (M)	07/23/16
6	Peter	L.	Emeri	342214	Male (M)	11/23/65
						••
Lo		lter keyword here		In Colum	First Name	

5. Only the search result appears (see the image below). The filtered list will keep appearing until you clear the keyword.

Q	Person Records	- 6 rows			— C	) X
4	2 😢 🗎					
	First Name $ riangle$	Middle Name	Last Name	National ID	Gender	Date Of
1	David	Enyaman	Ewoton	7686587	Male (M)	11/19/65
◀	P P P P P P P P P P P					
Lo	ok For David			In Column	First Name	•
						Close

6. As shown above, select a row/record you would like to delete and click on the Delete (<sup>(2)</sup>) button as shown in the picture below.

Q	Person Record	s - 6 rows			— C	) X
6	• 🥒 😢 🗎					
	First Name 🛆	Middle Name	Last Name	National ID	Gender	Date Of
1	David	Enyaman	Ewoton	7686587	Male (M)	11/19/65
Lo	ok For David			In Column	First Name	-
						Close

7. A warning dialog appears to warn you that once deleted, it cannot be recovered, as shown below.



8. If you click on the **Yes** button, the record will be removed. If you click on the **No** button, the record will not be deleted.

# **Managing Spatial Data**

As already discussed, STDM is a QGIS plugin that enables you to utilize all the great features of the most popular open-source geo-spatial software, QGIS. Consequently, you can use any QGIS features and also benefit from QGIS features that are customized for STDM. The customized QGIS features make it very easy to manage spatial data in STDM.

**Spatial Entities** can be created just like any other entity. A spatial entity is an entity with at least one geometry column as defined in the **Configuration Wizard**. A spatial entity should have at least one geometry column and an attribute data, that holds non-spatial data.

STDM supports point, line, polygon, multipoint, and multiline and multipolygon geometry.

In STDM, at least one spatial entity is required to be used as a spatial unit. A spatial unit is a spatial entity that participates in social tenure relationship. A spatial unit holds data of a parcel, structure, farmland, etc. You can also create other spatial entity holding different spatial data.

The following sub-sections enable you manage spatial data.

### **Adding Imagery data**

An imager data refers to a map image that could be a satellite image or scanned map with world real coordinates. The process and steps of Geo-referencing is explained in <u>Geo-referencing a map image topic</u>.

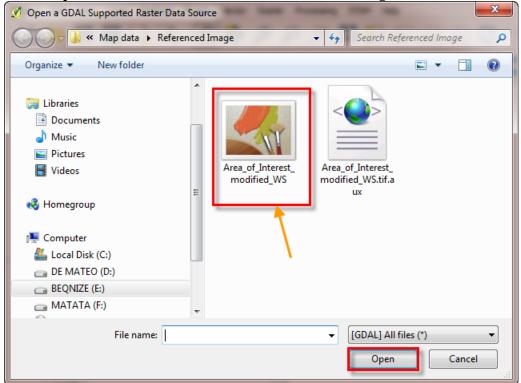
To add Imagery data to the **Canvas** follow the steps below.

**1**. Click **Add Raster Layer button** to add the imagery data into the canvas as shown in the image below.



- 2. Browse to where the imagery data source is located.
- **3.** Select the imagery data.

4. Click **Open** to add it to the canvas as illustrated in the image below.



The Imagery data appears on the window as shown below.

Layers IX Area of Interest modified WS	
Layers Browser Shortest path	
Start	
*	
Stop	
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
Criterion Length 👻	
Length	
Time	In the second second

Some of the tools that you can use to move the imagery data are;

This is used to Pan the map to a desired location.

This helps to zoom in to a working area of interest.

F This helps to zoom out on the map.

## **Renaming Spatial Entity Layer**

The image below shows the Layers Panel of QGIS. The STDM layer name shown in the image below is not very appealing. To set a friendly display name, ensure the layer is selected.



Click Set Display Name on the spatial unit manager.

Provide a friendly name on the change display name dialog as shown in the image below then click **OK** to change the name.

🦸 Change Display Na 📍 🗙
Current Name is spatial_unit.geom_polygon
Structures
OK Cancel

**Note**: Changing layer names through the Spatial Unit Manager only applies to layer in STDM database.

## **Adding a Spatial Entity Layer**

To visualize a spatial entity layer, we have to add it into **QGIS Map Canvas**. The QGIS **Map Canvas** is at the centre of QGIS interface on which added maps layers are displayed.

To add spatial entity into the map canvas, we use Spatial Unit Manager follow the steps below.

1. Enable the **Spatial Unit Manager**. By default, the Spatial Unit Manager is added to QGIS left side below the **Layers Panel** as shown in the image below.

	Sociologica - Layers Panel Sociologica - El 🗵			
V	🏨 🔍 🍸 🖏 🛪 🗊 🖬 🗔			
¶₽				
Po				
<b>Q</b>				
•	Spatial Unit Manager			
	Manage Layers:			
	Layer 🛐 in_structure.spatial_geometry 🔻			
<b>%</b>	Add Layer to Canvas			
V-				
V: -	Set Display Name			
	GPS Feature Import			
Current STDM Profile: Informal Settlement Coordinate .57				

If it is not enabled, click on the **Spatial Unit Manager** button (see the image below) on the Spatial Unit Manager sub-menu under the STDM Menu to enable it.



Clicking on the button or the sub-menu enables the **Spatial Unit Manager**.

2. Select a spatial entity geometry. By default, the spatial unit geometry is the first in the Layers combo box as shown below.

Spatial Unit Manager					
- Manage	Manage Layers:				
Layer 🐚 in_structure.spatial_geometry 🔹					
Add Layer to Canvas					
	Set Display Name				
Import Feature:					
From GPX File					

If you wish to add another entity geometry, click on the layers drop down as shown below.

~~~~~	Spatial Unit Manager			
Manage	Layers:			
Layer in_structure.spatial_geometry in_structure.spatial_geometry in_vw_social_tenure_relationshi				
Set Display Name				
Import Feature:				
From GPX File				

3. Add the geometry you wish to QGIS Map Canvas and Layers Panel by clicking on Add Layer to Canvas as shown below.

Spatial Unit Manager				
Manage Layers:				
Layer	😭 in_structure.spatial_geometry 🔹 🔻			
	Add Layer to Canvas			
	Set Display Name			
Import Feature:				
From GPX File				

Once added you will be able to see your layer in the layers panel and the map canvas as shown in the image below.

V	Layers Panel	
	X in structure.spatial geometry	
ሞ		
Po		
-		
	Spatial Unit Manager	
	Manage Layers:	
	Layer 🐚 in_structure.spatial_geometry 🔻	
	Add Layer to Canvas	
<b>%</b>	Set Display Name	
V	- Import Feature:	
• 🔝	From GPX File	

## **Digitizing in a Spatial Entity Layer**

One way of adding a new record in a spatial entity such as spatial unit, is by digitizing a feature using a base map imagery. The other ways of adding a new record are by <u>importing a spatial data</u> and by <u>importing a GPS data</u>.

Ensure the Imagery or base map layer is added on QGIS map canvas. To add an imagery data, follow the steps on <u>Adding Imagery data topic.</u>

The following steps explain how to digitize a polygon that could be a plot, parcel, structure and any other area.

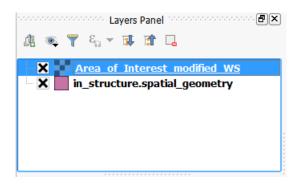
You can digitize line or point using similar steps.

1. Add an imagery data as explained in <u>Adding Imagery data topic.</u>

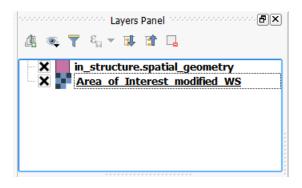
2. Then add a spatial entity layer in to QGIS Map Canvas that you wish the new polygon to be added to.

#### To add a spatial entity layer follow the steps in <u>Add a Spatial Entity Geometry</u> topic.

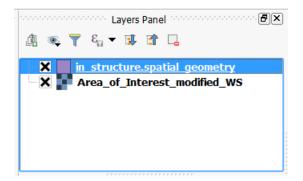
3. Once the layers are added, you will see them listed as the image below. Make sure the spatial entity layer is above the imagery. Select and drag and drop to change their order.



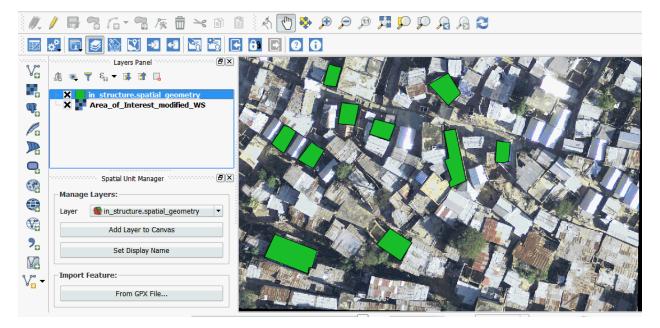
The correct order is the spatial entity layer at the top and the imagery below it, as shown in the image below. This is needed so that the spatial entity geometry is not hidden under the imagery.



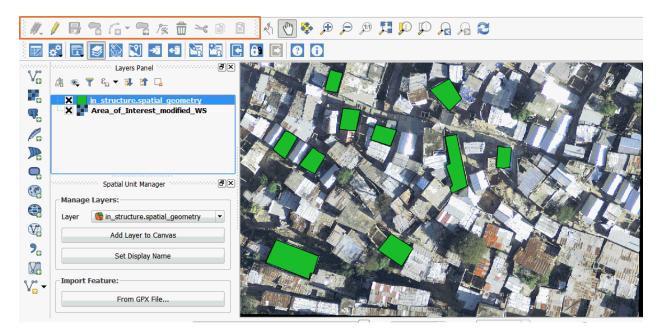
4. Select the spatial entity layer to digitize features into, as shown below.



This results in the placement of the spatial entity geometry above the imagery as shown in the image below.



5. Locate the Digitizing Toolbar of QGIS that is highlighted in the image below.



**6.** Click the **Toggle Editing tool** in the **Digitizing Toolbar** as highlighted below. This will turn your selected layer to edit mode.



7. The **Toggle Editing tool** enables most of the digitizing tools. Select the **Add Feature Tool** as highlighted below.



8. Find an area on top of which you would like to add a feature. This could be a demarcated plot, a house, etc.

9. Zoom close to the area you wish to digitize and start clicking on one of the corners of the area. Then, move your cursor to the next corner and click on the next corner.



Do the same for all the corners in the area.

Once you are done clicking on all corners. Right-click on the area.

10. A spatial entity form pops up, allowing you to input attribute data on the feature as shown below.

19	👷 🔂 🖄 🥼 🙉 🖨 🖓 🗖 🚺	◎ 🔏 🔏 🔁
]		
	Primary Supporting Documents	
3	Code 1	
1	Name 0	
_n	Ownership Type	
	Related Structures	
e		
	Recognition Status	
tia ar	Toilet	and the second
ar	Utilities 🕕 🚺	
e.	Save Cancel	

Fill out the form and click on the **Save** button as shown below.

	🤨 Structure Edito		×
; [	Primary Suppo	orting Documents	
4	Code	S1	0
	Name	Structure 1	0
n	Ownership Type	Private Individual	0
2	Related Structures	Kitchen Toilet Bathroom Store	0
	Recognition Status	Yes 🔻	0
r	Utilities	Water Toilet Electricity	0
		Save	èl 🛛

This will save the data temporarily until you click on the Save button in the digitizing toolbar. When saved, the digitized feature appears on the layer as shown below.



Continue adding more features. by repeating **Steps 9** and **10**.

11. Save your work into STDM database. Your digitized features will only be added into the STDM database when you click on the Save button in the Digitizing toolbar as highlighted in the image below.



12. End your editing session by clicking on the **Toggle Editing tool** as highlighted below.



This will disable all tools as shown below.



Check your saved data by going to the Entities menu and by selecting the Spatial Entity Menu.

G	i 🛃 🔛 🕄 📲 😫
	Structure
	Person
1	New Social Tenure Relationship

This opens your spatial entity Browser. Search for the latest record as shown below.

	🧭 Structure R	ecords - 13	rows		– 🗆 X
5	Code /	Name Structure 1	Ownership Type Private Individual	Related Structures	Recognition Stat
ľ					
re St		****	7 7 7	In Column	
p	Look For S1			In Column	Code  Close

In the Entity browser, you can select the record and edit the attribute data.

#### Tips:

**Undo a selection of a corner:** To undo a selection of a corner while digitizing, press the **Backspace** button on your keyboard.

**Undo feature creation:** To undo a feature creation, that temporarily removes a feature from the layer, click on the **Undo** button on **QGIS Edit Menu**.

**Redo feature creation:** To redo a feature creation, that temporarily restores a feature from the layer, click on the **Redo** button on QGIS Edit Menu.

**Cancel current digitized feature:** Press the **Escape (Esc)** button on your keyboard to stop digitizing and cancel what you have started.

## **Importing GPS Data**

**GPS Feature Import** tool is a special functionality within STDM that allows uploading, editing of GPS field recorded features and saving into STDM **Spatial Entity**.

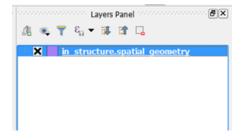
GPS Feature Import tool provides the following functionalists.

- Upload of .gpx files.
- Selection of feature type for the uploaded file.
- Editing and visualization of a feature.
- Creation and saving of feature attribute data.

The steps below describe the process of importing GPS recorded features into STDM **Spatial Entity**.

1. Add a spatial entity layer into the map canvas using the steps under <u>Adding a Spatial Entity Layer</u> topic.

2. Once the layer is added select the layer in the **Layers** panel as shown below. Click on it to select the layer.



3. On the **Spatial Unit Manager**, click on the button **GPS Import Feature** as highlighted in the image below.

	Spatial Unit Manager
Manag	je Layers:
Layer	🕞 in_structure.spatial_geometry 💌
	Add Layer to Canvas
	Set Display Name
	GPS Feature Import

4. The **GPS Feature Import** dialog appears as shown in the image below.

🔇 GPS Feature Import	?	×
Feature Import Primary Supporting Documents GPX Data Source		]
File: Feature Type:	Browse	
- GPX Data Editor	Select Al	51
Save	Cane	cel

The **GPS Feature Import** module loads with a **Feature Import** tab and the **Entity Editor** that enables you to add a record as discussed in <u>Adding a Record</u> topic.

5. Select the GPX file. When you click on the **Browse** button as highlighted below, a window will pop up to allow you to choose a **GPX** file from your computer. You can also drag **.gpx** file into the file path text box. Once you select a file with an extension of **.gpx**, it will be added in the file text box.

🤨 GPS Feature Import	?	×
Feature Import         Primary         Survey Collection         Supporting Documents           GPX Data Source         GPX Data Source		
File:       D:/Tracks/Track_FRANK.gpx         Feature Type:	Browse.	·· ·
GPX Data Editor		
	Select A Clear A	
Save	Car	icel

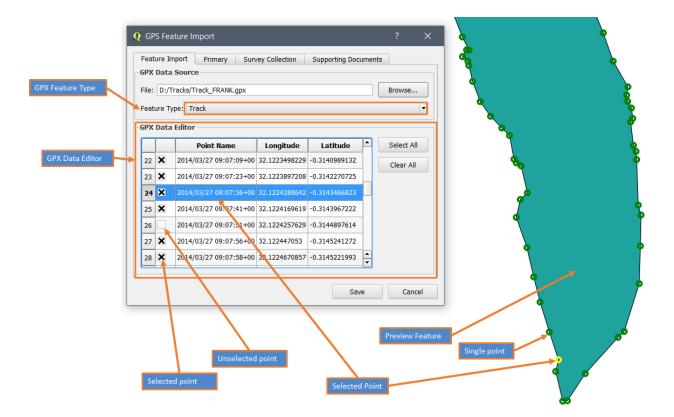
6. Once the **Feature Type** is enabled, click on the drop-down button to select a **GPX Feature type** that relates to the added **.gpx** file as demonstrated in the previous step.

Currently the **GPS Feature Import** tool supports the following GPX formats;

- **Waypoint**: An individual point among a collection of points with no sequential relationship.
- **Track**: Ordered list of waypoints describing a path or a line.
- **Route**: Ordered list of waypoints representing a series of significant turn or stage points leading to a destination.

When you select a feature type, the following takes place.

- The GPX Data Editor box is populated with a table containing points that are in the .gpx file. You can select, and unselect points using the checkbox in the first column of the table.
- A Preview feature is rendered in QGIS **Map Canvas** as illustrated in the image below. The Preview feature shape changes based on the removal and selection of points. Highlighted points are differentiated with QGIS default selection colour, in this case yellow (see the image below).



The table enables you to choose points you would like to import. This is achieved by clicking on the checkbox shown on the first column of the table if it is not checked.

Remove points that are not needed or points that are wrongly recorded by removing the selection. To remove the selection, click on the checkboxes on first column.

**A removed point**, from which the checkbox selection is removed, is also removed from the feature on map. This results in the change in the shape of the feature.

**An included point**, with a checkbox checked, can be seen with a green round marker on the map, as shown in the figure above. This means that the points with a green round colour will be included in the feature created from the GPS points.

To check all checkboxes, click on the **Select All** button as shown in the image below. This will redraw the feature in the map canvas showing all the data points. All data points would be imported into STDM if this option is chosen.

G	PS Fea	ature Import				?	×						
	ture Ir Data												
File:	: D:/1		Browse										
Feat	ture T			•									
GPX	GPX Data Editor												
		Point Name	Longitude	Latitude	ΡΓ	Select All	٦						
1	×	2014/03/27 09:03:49+00	32.1219531912	-0.3128092736		Clear All							
2	×	2014/03/27 09:03:54+00	32.1219694521	-0.3128423821									
3	×	2014/03/27 09:04:07+00	32.1220158041	-0.3129613213									
4	×	2014/03/27 09:04:22+00	32.1220448054	-0.3130180668									
5	×	2014/03/27 09:04:30+00	32.1220340766	-0.3130169772									
6	×	2014/03/27 09:04:34+00	32.1220163908	-0.3130458109									
7	×	2014/03/27 09:04:37+00	32.1220393572	-0.3130645864	▲ ▼								
-													
				Sav	/e	Cance	el						

Click on **Clear All** button (highlighted in the image below) to uncheck all points in the GPX Data Editor and to clear the feature from the map canvas. Doing this prevents you from importing GPX data into STDM as no points would have been checked for import.

, GP	S Fea	ture Import			? ×							
Feat												
GPX Data Source												
File:	Browse											
Featu	•											
GPX Data Editor												
		Point Name	Longitude	Latitude	Select All							
1		2014/03/27 09:03:49+00	32.1219531912	-0.3128092736	Clear All							
2		2014/03/27 09:03:54+00	32.1219694521	-0.3128423821								
3		2014/03/27 09:04:07+00	32.1220158041	-0.3129613213								
4		2014/03/27 09:04:22+00	32.1220448054	-0.3130180668								
5		2014/03/27 09:04:30+00	32.1220340766	-0.3130169772								
6		2014/03/27 09:04:34+00	32.1220163908	-0.3130458109								
7		2014/03/27 09:04:37+00	32.1220393572	-0.3130645864								
			1		1							
				Sav	e Cancel							

You can also change the values of the coordinates if needed. Double click on a coordinate (**Longitude** or **Latitude** field) to change its value as shown in the image below. Complete the edit by hitting **Enter/Return** keys on the keyboard. This has the effect of redrawing the feature on the **Map Canvas**.

	GPX	D:/T	Source				Browse	
	Feat	ture Ty	rpe: Track				Q	
	GPX	Data	Editor					õ
			Point Name	Longitude	Latitude		Select All	
	11	×	2014/03/27 09:05:16+00	32.1221370902	-0.3133017104		Clear All	8,
	12	×	2014/03/27 09:05:29+00	32.1221857052	-0.313351918			
ate being	13	×	2014/03/27 09:05:34+00	32.1222183947	-0.3133841883		Point being edited	
	14	×	2014/03/27 09:05:46+00	32.1222377568	-0.313485777			
	15	×	2014/02/27 09:05:48+00	32.1222474799	-0.3135013673			
	16	×	2014/03/27 09:05:51+00	32 1222683508	-0.3135143593			
	17	×	2014/03/27 09:06:05+00	32.1222951729	0.3136300296	•		1
					Sav	/e	Cancel	

If you want to sort the order of the **Points**, you can use the drag and drop feature. To sort the points, select a Point you would like to move. While clicking on the selected row/ **Point**, move your cursor to make the row float. You can now move it with your cursor and drop it in a row you want it to be moved as shown in the image below.

		mport Primary				
ile:	D:/1	Tracks/Track_FRANK.gpx				Browse
eat	ure T	ype: Track				
РХ	Data	Editor				
		Point Name	Longitude	Latitude		Select All
11	×	2014/03/27 09:05:16+00	32.1221370902	-0.3133017104		Clear All
12	×	2014/03/27 09:05:29+00	32.1221857052	-0.313351918		
13	×	2014/03/27 09:05:34+00	32.1222183947	-0.3133841883		
14	×	2014/03/27 09:05:46+00	32.1222377568	-0.313485777		
15	×	2014/03/27 09:05 2014/03	3/27 09:0 <mark>6:</mark> 05+0	32.1222666	-0.31	36300296
16	×	2014/03/27 09:05:51+00	M			
17	×	2014/03/27 09:06:05+00	32.1222666	-0.3136300296		

7. Once you finish choosing the points, click on the **Primary** tab to add attribute information as shown in the image below.

🧕 GPS Feat	ture Im	port			?	×
Feature Imp	port	Primary	Survey Collection	Supporting Documents	1	
Code						
Area	0.00					•
Value	0.00					•
Parcel Type						•
Landuse						•
Dispute						•
Location						ła 🚺
				Save	Ca	ancel

Fill out the form with relevant information uploaded supporting documents if needed. You can also upload supporting documents. Using the Collection tab, you can link the record to a related entity if the entity is referenced by another entity. For more in working with Entity Editor, review <u>Adding a Record</u> topic.

Once done, click on the **Save** button to add the feature into the spatial entity with its attribute data added using the form.

A success message, as shown in the image below, pops up.



Click on the **OK** button on the message box. This will take you back to the Feature Import tab where you can edit, check or uncheck previously uploaded GPX data points. You can as well at this point select different **Feature Type** or upload a new GPX file altogether. You can also click on the Cancel button of the GPS Feature Import dialog to close the window, when you finish importing **GPS Features**. You can check the result by viewing the added feature in the map canvas and its attribute data in the entity browser.

If the feature is a **Line**, a line will be drawn when the user selects the corresponding vertexes comprising the line feature.

Similarly, for a **Point** feature, only one point is selectable to import to STDM database.

**Note**: If you wish to learn about the feature but lack a .gpx file, you can use the STDM Sample data gpx files. The sample data is located in .stdm folder under your user folder inside SampleData/Sample\_GPX\_Data folder.

### **Viewing Extents of Spatial Entity Features**

Once you have imported a spatial record or digitized it, you can view each added geometry using the map canvas. The Spatial Entity Browser is further customized to highlight and zoom into a record's feature that you have selected.

Follow the steps below to view the geometry of a selected record.

1. Go to the STDM Toolbar and click on Entities menu as shown below.

	Entities	menu							
Informal_Settlement 💌 🃝	<b>*</b>	1 🖌	∎ ‱	ۍ	ei 🛐	5	<b>E</b> 6	2	6

Alternatively, you can click on the STDM Menu located under QGIS Menu and click on the Entities sub-menu as shown in the image below.

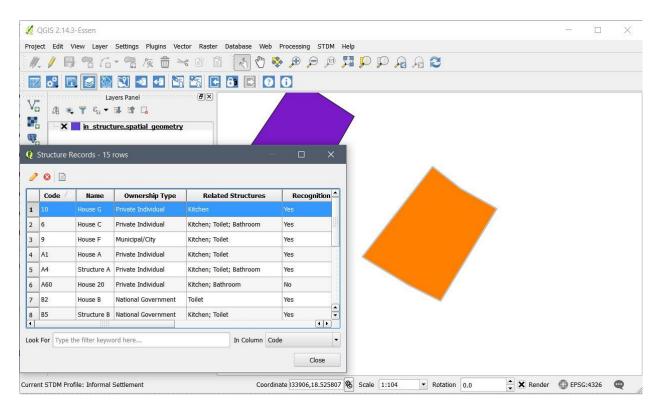
STDM Help	
Configuration Wizard	F7
🗬 Admin Settings	•
<u>च</u> Entities	•
🛃 Spatial Unit Manager	
E Spatial Entity Details	
Wiew Social Tenure Relationship	<b>b</b>
🛐 Manage Administrative Units	
🛃 Import Data	
🔄 Export Data	
🛐 Document Designer	
🔄 Document Generator	
C Logout	Del
Change Password	
E Login	F2
Help Contents	F10
1 About	

2. Open an **Entity Browser** of any entity containing a geometry column.

3. A **Spatial Entity Browser** opens, positioned in the bottom left corner of QGIS unlike non-spatial entity browser as shown in the image below. This is to allow better visibility to the **Map Canvas**.

2	QGIS 2.14.	3-Essen						-	
0	ject Edit	View Layer	Settings Plugins Ve	ctor Raster Database Web					
A	1. / 🗏	120	- 🕾 /호 🛱 >	< 🗈 🖻 🔥 🖑 🖣	. 🔍 🔍 🗣 🇳	🖸 🗛 🗛 🔍 🔍 🔣			
			X		0				
			vers Panel						
V	。 [1] @								
Ģ		in struct	ure.spatial geometry						
9		in Scruce	ure.spacial geometry				1		
		Records - 15	rows						
-	Structure r	151							
6	8								
	Code /	Name	Ownership Type	Related Structures	Recognition				
1	10	House G	Private Individual	Kitchen	Yes				
		House C	Private Individual	Kitchen; Toilet; Bathroom	Yes				
2	6	nouse e	i nvate maividuai						
-	6 9	House F	Municipal/City	Kitchen; Toilet	Yes	-			
3	9		Sector and the sector of the sector		Yes				
2 3 4 5	9 A1	House F House A	Municipal/City	Kitchen; Toilet					
3 4 5	9 A1 A4	House F House A	Municipal/City Private Individual	Kitchen; Toilet Kitchen; Toilet	Yes				
3 4 5 6	9 A1 A4 A60	House F House A Structure A	Municipal/City Private Individual Private Individual	Kitchen; Toilet Kitchen; Toilet Kitchen; Toilet; Bathroom	Yes Yes				
3 4 5 6 7	9 A1 A4 A60 B2	House F House A Structure A House 20 House B	Municipal/City Private Individual Private Individual Private Individual National Government	Kitchen; Toilet Kitchen; Toilet Kitchen; Toilet; Bathroom Kitchen; Bathroom Toilet	Yes Yes No Yes				
3 4 5 6 7 8	9 A1 A4 A60 B2 B5	House F House A Structure A House 20 House B	Municipal/City Private Individual Private Individual Private Individual	Kitchen; Toilet Kitchen; Toilet Kitchen; Toilet; Bathroom Kitchen; Bathroom	Yes Ves Ves Ves				
3 4 5 6 7 8 4	9 A1 A4 A60 B2 B5	House F House A Structure A House 20 House B Structure B	Municipal/City Private Individual Private Individual Private Individual National Government National Government	Kitchen; Toilet Kitchen; Toilet Kitchen; Toilet; Bathroom Kitchen; Bathroom Toilet	Yes Ves No Yes Yes				
3 4 5 6 7 8 4	9 A1 A4 A60 B2 B5	House F House A Structure A House 20 House B Structure B	Municipal/City Private Individual Private Individual Private Individual National Government National Government	Kitchen; Toilet Kitchen; Toilet Kitchen; Toilet; Bathroom Kitchen; Bathroom Toilet Kitchen; Toilet	Yes Ves No Yes Yes				

4. Select a row to view a feature attached to a record as shown below.



When you select a row, its attached geometry appears in the map canvas as shown in the above image.

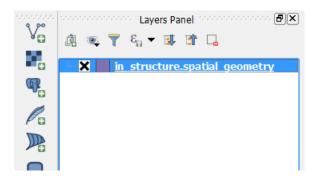
When you click on the Close button, the active layer gets removed from the map canvas.

## **Viewing a Spatial Entity Details**

The **Spatial Entity Details** enables you to see a tree like details of a **Spatial Entities** and **Views** by selecting a feature or features on **the Map Canvas**. In addition, you can edit and delete relevant records.

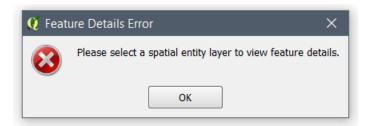
Follow the steps below to view a Spatial Entity Details.

1. To enable the Spatial Entity Details, you need to <u>add an STDM layer</u> and select the layer as shown in the image below.



2. Click on the **Spatial Entity Details** button located in the **STDM Toolbar** as highlighted in the image below.

If you haven't selected any layer, you will see the following error message.



If you have selected a layer that is not an STDM **Entity** or **View** layer, you will see the error message below.



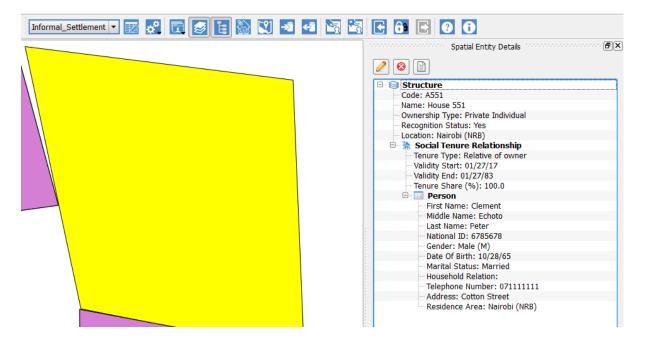
3. If you have selected an STDM layer in the **Layers** panel, a box appears on the right side of the QGIS Map Canvas as shown in the image below. This the box in which the details of a clicked feature in the Map Canvas appears. Moreover, your mouse cursor changes from the default arrow to QGIS **Feature Select** cursor (**S**).

**********	Spatial Entity Details	
Please select a	feature to view their o	letails.

4. To view the details, you need to click on one or more feature on the **Map Canvas**.

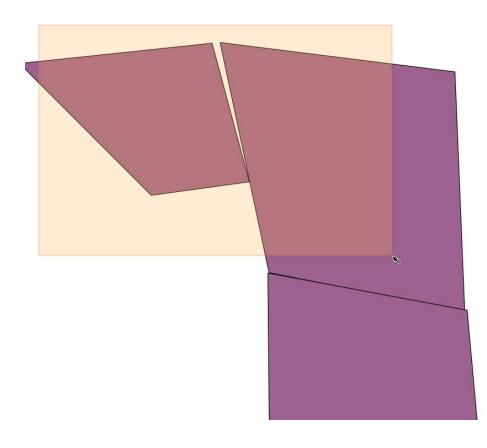
To view the details of a single feature, click on a feature that belongs to an STDM layer.

As soon as you click on a feature, the record's details appear as shown in the image below.



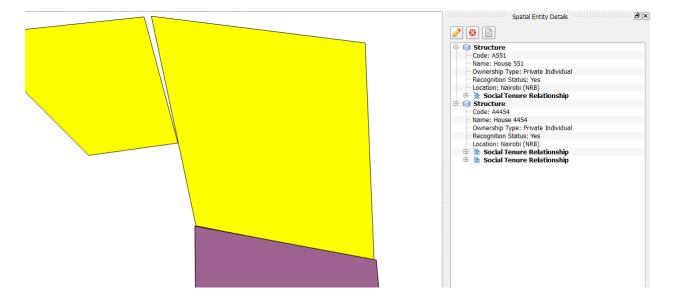
Click on the **Plus** button to expand and the **Minus** button to collapse the details tree.

To view the details of multiple features, click on a one point in the **Map Canvas** and start dragging the cursor to the bottom right direction to expand the selection area as shown in the image below.

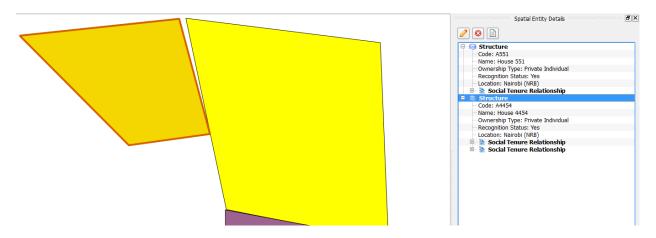


Once, you have covered the features you would like to select, release the cursor. It could take few seconds to load the details of the selected features.

The details of each feature appears in the **Spatial Entity Details** box as shown in the image below.



To identify which detail stands for which feature, click on Spatial Entity name as shown in the image below.



5. You can edit, delete and view supporting documents of the Entity records in the details using the buttons highlighted in the image below.

Spatial Entity Details
🖻 🎯 Structure
Code: A551
Name: House 551
Ownership Type: Private Individual
Recognition Status: Yes
Location: Nairobi (NRB)
🗄 🐘 Social Tenure Relationship
🗏 📚 Structure
Code: A4454
Name: House 4454
Ownership Type: Private Individual
Recognition Status: Yes
Location: Nairobi (NRB)
🕀 🦬 Social Tenure Relationship
🗄 🐘 Social Tenure Relationship

You can edit all Entity records. On the other hand, it is not possible to delete records linked to a **Social Tenure Relationship** record. This means, you cannot delete a party record as it only appears when it is linked to a **Social Tenure Relationship** record. You cannot edit or delete **View** records as views by nature are not editable. In addition, you cannot view supporting documents of **View** records as they not linked to a supporting document. More details of editing and deleting Entities is discussed in <u>Managing Entities</u> sub-topics. Editing and Deleting Social Tenure Relationship records is discussed in <u>Managing Social Tenure Relationship</u> sub-topics.

Note: The Spatial Entity Details only works for STDM Entity and View layers.

# **Managing Social Tenure Relationship**

'People – land' relationships can be expressed in terms of persons, group of people and institution (parties) having a right to parcel, garden, or structure (spatial units). In STDM, this right is called Social Tenure Relationship (STR).

The Social Tenure Relationship has its own table that stores each person's relationship to a spatial unit. Most importantly, it also gives you an option to choose the type of social tenure relationship between the person and the spatial unit. In addition, you can upload a supporting document that can be any document you think is useful for informational purpose and as evidence.

The STR table has two modules that are used to create, edit, and search STR.

## **Creating a Social Tenure Relationship**

Creating a Social Tenure Relationship is carried out through a module called **New Social Tenure Relationship**.

The module enables you to do the following:

- Add a person or persons
- Add a spatial unit
- Choose a social tenure relationship type for each persons added
- Specify tenure share in percent
- Upload supporting document that is related to social tenure relationship
- Set tenure validity period

To create a social tenure relationship, follow the steps below.

1. Start the **New Social Tenure Relationship** module.

There are two ways of starting **New Social Tenure Relationship** module.

The first way is through **Entities** menu by selecting **New Social Tenure Relationship** sub-menu as shown in the image below.

🖾 📌	🖬 🛃 🕅 🛂 🛃 🖓 🖨 🕒 🖻 🕑 🛈	
	III Spatial Unit	
	Person	
	👚 New Social Tenure Relationship	

The other option is from View Social Tenure Relationship module.

First click on View Social Tenure Relationship button on STDM toolbar.



Inside **View Social Tenure Relationship**, click on the add ( +) button, located inside Search Result as shown below.

🤨 View Social Tenure Relationship	-	
Search By: Person Structure Look for in column First Name First Name Search Clear Results Search Results: Search Results:	Spatial Unit Preview	
	Kender Scale factor: 1.000      Local Web  Supporting Documents	¢
		Close

2. You will see the module below. After reading the description, click on **Party** item in the left side to add a party record.

🧕 Create Social Tenure Relationship		?	×
The Social Tenure Relationship			
Social Tenure Relationship 1     Party     Spatial Unit     Tenure Information     Supporting Documents     Validity Period	Social Tenure Relationship (STR) refers to the right or 'relationship' between party and spatial ur represented as polygons on the map). The two entities are related through a tenure right. This module provides a mechanism to link the two entities with a tenure type and substanciated documents. To begin, click on the 'Party' item in the left side.		
	Save	Cano	el

3. On **Party** page (see the image below), you can add the party record to be linked to a spatial unit/structure/parcel. If you have allowed multiple parties for one spatial unit, you can add more than one person. If you have selected more than one entity to be a party entity, you can switch to another party entity using the party selection combo box as highlighted in the image below.

😢 Create Social Tenure Relationship	?	×
Select the party by searching through the existing record.		
Select a party ent		I
Social Tenure Relationship 1     Party     Spatial Unit     Tenure Information     Supporting Documents     Validity Period     Name      Name     Name     Name     Name     Name     Name     Name     Name     Name     Name     Name     Name     Name     Name <	Person Institutio	
Save	Car	ncel

Click on the **Add** button ( +) to open the **Person Records** and select records.

4. Select a record that you would like to add. You can search for the party record you would like to add. Then, select it and click on the **Select** button as shown below.

+ 📀	Q	Person Records	s - 6 rows			(	⊐ ×	arty entity Pe	rson -
Social Ter		1						arital Status	House
- 🟠 Spatial		First Name	Middle Name	Last Name	National ID	Gender	Date Of		
Support	1	Alice	Akeno	Туа	3454364	Female (F)	10/28/80		
Validit		Clement	Echoto	Peter	6785678	Male (M)	10/28/65		
	3	David	Enyaman	Ewoton	7686587	Female (F)	10/26/80		
	4	James		Mucheni	686786	Female (F)	10/25/80	1	
	5	Peter	L.	Emeri	342214	Female (F)	10/27/80		
	6	Test Add					01/27/17		
		1. Select a pers	on			3. Click the ( button	Close		
	4						( T		
	Loc	<b>k For</b> Type the fi	Iter keyword here		In Colu	mn First Name	-		
						Select	Close		

If you want to add multiple records that are not continuous, follow the sub-steps below.

- a. Press the Control (Ctrl) key on your keyboard
- b. While still pressing the **Control** key, select another record you want to add.

If you want to add multiple records between two rows, follow the sub-steps below.

- a. Select a record that will be the first selection in the range.
- b. Press the **Shift** key on your keyboard
- c. While still pressing the **Shift** key, select the last row in the selection range

When you finish selecting all records, click on the **Close** button as highlighted in the image above.

Once you click the close button, you will see all the selected records in the page as shown below.

2	First Name	Middle Name	Last Name	National TD		Select a pa	rty entity Person	-
2			Last Name	Making I TD				
2	Alice			National ID	Gender	Date Of Birth	Marital Status	H
		Akeno	Туа	3454364	Female (F)	10/28/80	Married	
	Clement	Echoto	Peter	6785678	Male (M)	10/28/65	Married	
3	David	Enyaman	Ewoton	7686587	Female (F)	10/26/80	Single	
4	Peter	L.	Emeri	342214	Female (F)	10/27/80	Divorced	
							4	Ī
		٩	4	1	4		I	

You can remove records by selecting a record and by clicking on the **Remove** button (<sup>(S)</sup>).

5. Once you add records in the Party page, you will see the **Spatial Unit** item becomes active and clickable. Click on it, to open the Spatial Unit page. You have to select a spatial unit by clicking on the **Add** button as shown in the image below.

🤇 Create Social Tenure Relationship						?	×
Select the spatial unit that could be parcel, la	nd or building, structu	re and so on.					
	Add Spatial Unit	Preview Spatial Un	it				
⊟-  Social Tenure Relationship 1 □	• •						
Spatial Unit     Supporting Documents	Code Name	Ownership Type	Related Structures	Recognition Status	Utilities	Loca	
Validity Period							
	•					• •	
				Sav	e	Cance	el

6. When you click on the **Add** button (+), the Spatial unit/Structure Record Window appears to allow you select a spatial unit.

Select one spatial unit that should be linked to the parties/ persons that you have selected as shown below. You can use the search tool to look for the spatial unit you would like to add. Then, click on the **Select** button and click on the **Close** button.

Create Social Ten Select the spatial unit.				uilding structure and so	00			? ×
		Structure I				– 🗆 X		
Social Tenur							1	
Party		Code 🛆	Name	Ownership Type	Related Structures	Recognition Status		
- 🦮 Tenure Ir	1	A33	House 33	Private Individual	Kitchen	Yes	Utilities	Loca
Validity P	2	2 A4454	Hruse 4454	Private Individual	Kitchen	Yes	1	
	3	A551	House 551	Private Individual	Store	Yes		
	Ľ	1. Select a	spatial unit	record	1			
						B. Click the Close outton		
				* * * * * * * * * * * * * * * *		( ) ( )		
	Lo	ook For Type	the filter keyv	vord here	In Column	Code		
			2. Clic buttor	k the Select	Se	elect Close		••
						Save	e	Cancel

Once you have clicked the close button, you will see the selected records in the page as shown below.

🧕 Create Social Tenure Relationship		?	×
Select the spatial unit that could be parcel, I	and or building, structure and so on.		
	Add Spatial Unit Preview Spatial Unit		
Social Tenure Relationship 1 Party			
Spatial Unit     Tenure Information     Supporting Documents	Code Name Ownership Type Related Structures Recognition Status	Utilities	L
Validity Period	1 A33 House 33 Private Individual Kitchen Yes	Water	Nair
		[	••
	Save		Cancel

You can remove a record by selecting it and by clicking on the remove button  $(\bigotimes)$ .

You can view the selected spatial unit in a web map and local map. The base layers used in the web map are Google map and Open Street map. You can choose one of them.

🤨 Create Social Tenure Relationship		?	×
Select the spatial unit that could be parcel, lan	d or building, structure and so on.		
	Add Spatial Unit Preview Spatial Unit		
Social Tenure Relationship 1 Party Spatial Unit Tenure Information Supporting Documents Validity Period			
	Scale factor: 1.000	\$	
	🐺 Local 🔛 Web		
	Save	Car	ncel

**Note**: Web overlay may vary from the actual representation in the local map.

7. Once you select a spatial unit record, the Tenure Information item becomes active. Click on it, to open the **Tenure Information** page. This page loads a row for each party you have added in the Party Information page.

Select the tenure type of each party records in the first column by clicking on the drop down menu after looking at the **person** record next to it as shown in the image below. Specify the tenure share by choosing share percentage in the second column as shown in the image below.

1.00		е Туре	Share		First Name	Middle Name	Last Name	National ID	Gender
1	Owner	-	50.00%	+	Alice	Akeno	Туа	3454364	Female (F
2	Owner	-	25.00%	▲ ▼	Clement	Echoto	Peter	6785678	Male (M)
3	Owner	-	25.00%	10.000	David	Enyaman	Ewoton	7686587	Female (F)
4	Tenant	•	0.00%	+	Peter	L.	Emeri	342214	Female (F)
	3	3 Owner	3 Owner 🗸	3 Owner 🔻 25.00%	3 Owner 👻 25.00% 🗘	3 Owner 👻 25.00% 🗘 David	3 Owner 🔻 25.00% 🗘 David Enyaman	3 Owner 🝷 25.00% 🜩 David Enyaman Ewoton	3 Owner 🗸 25.00% 🗘 David Enyaman Ewoton 7686587

8. Once you have selected all the tenure type rows, the **Supporting Documents** item on the right becomes active together with Validity Period item. The page enables you to upload supporting documents for each document type specified in the **Configuration Wizard**. The supporting document could be any relevant document that could be used as evidence or information for the social tenure relationship.

If you have added more than one party, you will view information that specifies that a copy will be made for each document you have uploaded. This is to mean that when you upload one document, a unique copy will be created for each party. Thus, you can access each uploaded document from the social tenure relationship of each party. If only one party is linked to the spatial unit, you will not view this message. The uploaded document will only be accessible from the specified person or spatial unit.

If you have more than one document type, a tab will be created and you can click on the tabs or the drop down menu to upload the documents in to it.

9. To upload a supporting document, choose the document type by clicking on the tabs or the drop down menu. Then, click on the **Add Supporting Document** button as shown below.

🧕 Create Social Tenure Relationship			?	×
Upload one or more supporting documents	under each docum	ent types.		
Social Tenure Relationship 1 Party Spatial Unit Tenure Information Supporting Documents Validity Period	Document Type		id a document	
		Save	Canc	el

10. Choose a file to be uploaded by looking for the files in your Windows Explorer. Then, click on the **Open** button as shown below.

💋 Create Social Tenure Relationship					? ×
( Specify the Document File Location					×
$\leftarrow$ $\rightarrow$ $\checkmark$ $\uparrow$ 📜 $\rightarrow$ This PC $\Rightarrow$ Do	cuments	> documents	× Ŭ	Search documents	م
Organize   New folder				1 •	
늘 Desktop	^	Name	Date	Туре	Size
🗎 Documents		🖻 1.png	9/19/2016 6:17 PM	PNG File	1
📮 Downloads		2.png	9/19/2016 4:06 PM	PNG File	
🜗 Music		🖻 3.png	9/19/2016 4:06 PM	PNG File	
🔚 Pictures		🖻 4.png	9/19/2016 4:06 PM	PNG File	
💐 Samsung Galaxy S7		Certificate1.png	6/11/2016 11:09 AM	PNG File	1,6
📳 Videos		🖻 id1.jpg	9/19/2016 4:10 PM	JPG File	
💺 Local Disk (C:)		id2.jpg	9/19/2016 4:10 PM	JPG File	
🧼 Data (D:)	- 11	🖻 id3.jpg	9/19/2016 4:11 PM	JPG File	
🙆 CD Drive (E:) FIFA08					
HP_TOOLS (F:)					
😫 CD Drive (G:)	~	<			:
File name: Certifica	ate1.png		~	Source Documents (	*.jpg *.jpeg  ×
				Open	Cancel

When you click the **Open** button. a copy of the same document will be created for each party as shown in the image below.

You can view the documents by clicking on the file name. You can remove the documents by clicking on the **Remove** icon ( $\otimes$ ) on each document bar.

🤨 Create Social Tenure Relationship		? ×
Upload one or more supporting documents	s under each document types.	
Party Social Unit Party Spatial Unit Tenure Information	Document Type General  General  General	rting Document
Supporting Documents	Certificate1.png (1M)	8
	Save	Cancel

11. Specify the validity period of the tenure agreement by selecting the date range using the **Validity Period** component as shown in the image below. You can use the **Tenure duration** box to quickly set the validity end date. The **Tenure duration** can increase the date by year or by month. For instance, when you specify **100** on **Tenure duration** while **In years** radio button is selected, it will add 100 years on the end date with reference to the start date.

🤨 Create Social Tenure Relationship	?	×
Specify the validity range of dates. The year and month option is used to quickly set the date ranges.		
Social Tenure Relationship 1   Party   Supporting Documents   Validity Period     Tenure duration 100 • In years In months     Validity period from 1/28/2017 • to 1/28/2117 •		
Save	Can	cel

12. To save the social tenure relationship to the database, you have to click on the **Finish** button at the bottom of the module.

Once you click on it, you will see a success message as shown in the image below. Click the **OK** button as highlighted below, to close the **Social Tenure Relationship** editor.

🧕 Socia	al Tenure Relationship X
1	The social tenure relationship has been successfully created!
	ОК

# **Querying/ Viewing Social Tenure Relationship**

To view the social tenure relationship, click on the **View Social Tenure Relationship** button from the **STDM toolbar** as shown below.



Copyright © 2017 by UN-Habitat. All Rights Reserved

800

🤨 View Social Tenure Relationship	-		×
Search By: Person Structure Look for in column First Name Fitter Validity Period Search @ Clear Results Search Results:	Spatial Unit Preview		
	Render Scale factor: 1.000	÷	
	Supporting Documents		
		Close	;

This should start the View Social Tenure Relationship module as shown below.

The entities that were selected as Social Tenure Relationship entities in the Configuration Wizard will appear as shown in the image below. Each tab has a search tool that enables you to search a record's social tenure relationship.

Person	Structure	<b>}</b> ←−−	Entities participating in Social Tenure Relationship
Look fo	r		
		in column	
First Na	ime		-
<b>Filte</b>	er 🗌 🕖	Validity Perio	bd
•	Search		• Clear Results

**2.** First select a filter that you will use to search a record and then type the keyword such as First Name of the person you are looking for. Then, click the **Search** button (see the image below).

Search By:	
Person Structure	
Look for	3. Type a key word, such as name
in column	1. Choose a search filter
First Name	
🛐 Filter 🛛 🕖 Validity Period 🔸	2. Set a validity period date range (Optional)
6 Search Clear Results	4. Search for a record

**3.** The search results appear on a panel as shown below.

Search Results: —		
First Name	Middle Name	Last Name
Alice	Akeno	Туа
•		<b>۱</b>

When you click on the plus icon (⊞) you will see all the social tenure relationship related information of the record.

First Name	Middle N	
🖻 JOSEPH	ENYAMAN	Edit or Delete the Social
😑 🐘 Social Tenure Relationship 🛶	2	Tenure Relationship and
Tenure Type: Owner		view supporting document
🗆 🮯 Structure ┥ 🗕 🖉		
Code: A1		Preview a spatial unit
Name: House A		Preview a spatial unit
Recognition Status: Yes		
Ownership Type: Private Individ	ual	

The search result for a Spatial Unit is shown below. When you expand it, you will see similar details as shown above.

Search Results:			
🛉 🖉 😣			
Code	Name	Ownership Type	Relate
± A1	House A	Private Individual	Yes
-			
1			

If no social tenure relationship is defined for the record you are searching for, a **No STR Defined** item is displayed as shown below.

Search Results:			
<b>+</b> 2 ⊗			
First Name	Middle Name	Last Name	1
🖻 🛛 James	·	Mucheni	6
🔤 😣 No STR Defined			
			_
•			

4. When the first row is clicked, you can see the preview of the structure in the Spatial Unit Preview box as shown below. You can also preview the spatial unit in the party/ person search result page by clicking on the spatial unit/ structure.

Search By: Person Structure A33	🤨 View Social Tenure Relationship	-		
in column Code I Filter I Validity Period Code Search Results:	Search By: Person Structure A33 in column Code Filter Validity Period Search Clear Results Search Results: Code Name Ownership Type Relat	Image: Source of the second secon		
Supporting Documents  Close		Supporting Documents	Close	

If your computer is connected to the Internet, you can also view it on a Google Map and Open Street Maps as a base layer, as shown below.



5. Clicking on the **Social Tenure Relationship** row will enable you to open the box for Supporting Documents as shown in the image below.

This also enables the buttons to edit and delete the social tenure relationship.

🔇 View Social Tenure Relationship		_		×
Search By: Person Structure Alice in column First Name First Name First Name Search Results: Search Results: First Name Middle Name Last Name I Alice A	Spatial Unit Preview         Supporting Documents         General         Certificate1.png (1M)			
			Clo	ose

6. Click on the file name of the document to view the supporting document without going to the directory of the file, within STDM interface.



You can expand an image. Moreover, you can view more than one image in the same window. Close it or minimize it when you are done viewing the document.

7. From the person record, you can view the spatial unit geometry, by clicking on the spatial unit row as shown below.

🤰 View Social Tenure Re	elationship			_	
First Name	Middle Name Akeno  1 20 %	ear Results	Spatial Unit Preview		
Code: A33 Name: Hou Recognition Location: 1 Ownership T	S		Eccal Web	Scale factor: 1.000	-
•		4 •	Supporting Documents		

**8.** To clear search results, click on **Clear Results** button or make a new search.

9. Click the **Close button at the bottom** to hide the module.

# **Editing Social Tenure Relationship**

Editing a **Social Tenure Relationship** enables you to modify a social tenure relationship of a party as well as a spatial unit. This option will enable you to modify the party/ person, the spatial unit, the tenure type, the tenure share, the supporting documents uploaded for the social tenure relationship and the tenure validity period. Adding multiple records is not possible while editing because each social tenure relationship corresponds to one party. Replacing party and spatial unit, however, is possible.

It is similar to the **New Social Tenure Relationship** module. The edit module opens with all social tenure relationship information loaded into it so that you can modify it.

To edit a social tenure relationship record, follow the steps below.

1. To start **Editing Social Tenure Relationship** module, we need to first make a query using View Social Tenure Relationship as explained in <u>Querying/ Viewing Social Tenure Relationship topic</u>.

Alternatively, we can get the feature details of a **Spatial Unit** using the **Spatial Entity Detail** module discussed in <u>Viewing a Spatial Entity Details</u> topic.

2. A record that has a social tenure relationship displays a result similar to the image below. Click on the **Social Tenure Relationship** row to enable the **Edit** button that is located above the search result.

Search Results:	
First Name	Middle N
⊡ JOSEPH	ENYAMAN
💷 🚠 Social Tenure Relationship	
Code: A1 Name: House A Recognition Status: Yes Ownership Type: Private Individual	

Alternatively, right-click on the **Social Tenure Relationship** row to open the context menu as shown in the image below.

First Name		Middle Name	Last Name	Ŀ
Peter		L.	Emeri	3
😐 🚴 So	Expand	1		
	Collapse			
	🥖 Edit			
	🔟 Delete			
		-		

You can also edit a **Social Tenure Relationship** record from the Spatial Entity Details by clicking on the **Social Tenure Relationship** item and clicking on the **Edit** button as shown in the image below.

Spatial Entity Details
🖻 🥪 Structure
Code: A551
Name: House 551
Ownership Type: Private Individual
Recognition Status: Yes
Location: Nairobi (NRB)
Social Tenure Relationship
Tenure Type: Relative of owner
Validity Start: 01/27/17
Validity End: 01/27/83
Tenure Share (%): 100.0
🖻 🔲 Person
First Name: Clement
Middle Name: Echoto
Last Name: Peter
National ID: 6785678
Gender: Male (M)
Date Of Birth: 10/28/65
Marital Status: Married
Household Relation:
Telephone Number: 07111111
Address: Cotton Street
Residence Area: Nairobi (NRB)

3. When you click the **Edit** button or menu (*P*), you will be able to see the **Edit Social Tenure relationship** module as shown below.

🤨 Edit Social Tenure Relationship							?		×
Select the party by searching through the exis	ting record.								
40	-					Select a pa	rty entity Per	rson	•
B Social Tenure Relationship 1	First Name	Middle Name	Last Name	National ID	Gender	Date Of Birth	Marital Sta	itus	Ŧ
Spatial Unit	1 James		Mucheni	686786	Female (F)	10/25/80	Married		
Supporting Documents									
Validity Period									
	•							•)	
						Save		Cancel	

Editing a Social Tenure relationship is similar to <u>creating a Social Tenure Relationship</u>. The major difference is that you can only have one party/ person as each social tenure relationship corresponds to one person. It is the same for spatial unit.

As a result, when you try to add another party on top of the existing one, the existing record will be replaced by the newly selected one. The same applies in the spatial unit page.

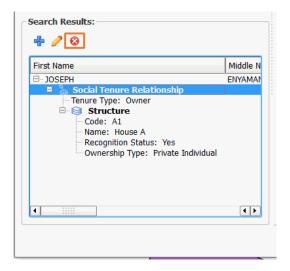
# **Deleting a Social Tenure Relationship**

Deleting a social tenure relationship will lead to the removal of the link between a party and a spatial unit. In addition, any supporting document will be removed from the database and STDM documents storage location.

To delete a social tenure relationship record, follow the steps below.

1. Make a Query using **View Social Tenure Relationship** as explained in <u>Querying/ Viewing Social</u> <u>Tenure Relationship topic</u>.

2. A record that has a social tenure relationship displays a result similar to the image below. Click on the Social Tenure Relationship row to enable the **Delete** button that is located above the search result. Then, click on the **Delete** button ( $\bigotimes$ ).



Alternatively, right-click on the **Social Tenure Relationship** row to open the context menu as shown in the image below and click on the **Delete** menu.

		Middle Name	Last Name	L
B-Peter		L.	Emeri	3
🗉 🚴 So	Expand			
	Collapse	1		
	🧷 Edit			
	🔟 Delete			

You can also delete a **Social Tenure Relationship** record from the Spatial Entity Details by click on the **Social Tenure Relationship** item and clicking on the **Delete** button as shown in the image below.

Spatial Entity Details
🖻 🎯 Structure
Code: A551
- Name: House 551
Ownership Type: Private Individual
Recognition Status: Yes
Location: Nairobi (NRB)
Social Tenure Relationship
Tenure Type: Relative of owner
Validity Start: 01/27/17
Validity End: 01/27/83
Tenure Share (%): 100.0
e Person
First Name: Clement
Middle Name: Echoto
Last Name: Peter
National ID: 6785678
Gender: Male (M)
Date Of Birth: 10/28/65
Marital Status: Married
Household Relation:
Telephone Number: 07111111
Address: Cotton Street
Residence Area: Nairobi (NRB)

3. A dialog, illustrated below, appears when you click on the delete button or menu.

This action will remove the social tenure relationship and dependent supporting documents from the database and the documents folder. This action cannot be undone and once removed, it can only be recreated through the 'New Social Tenure Relationship' wizard. Would you like to proceed?         Click Yes to proceed or No to cancel.         Yes       No	🧕 🛛	te Social Tenure Relationship X	
Click Yes to proceed or No to cancel.	8	supporting documents from the database and the documents folder. This action cannot be undone and once removed, it can only be recreated	
	-		
		Yes No	

4. After reading the message, click on the **Yes** button, if you still want to delete the social tenure relationship. If you do not want to delete the social tenure relationship, click on the **No** button.

# **Designing and Generating Documents**

# **Designing a Document Template**

Document Designer is an STDM module that enables you to design a template so that you can generate documents based on STDM database automatically. Document Designer is built on top of QGIS Print Composer. This enables Document Designer be able to use different features and tools of the Print Composer. Using Document Designer, you can create templates that can be used for title deeds, certificates, letters, parcel maps, statistical reports and so on. Once a document template is designed, you can generate documents for one or more records using Document Generator as explained in <u>Generating Documents Using Templates</u> topic.

**Note:** when designing a template, make sure you are creating it for the correct profile and entity. If you create a template while logged into one profile and later try to generate a document while logged into another STDM profile, the template file will not be visible.

#### **Getting Started with Document Designer**

To start the **Document Designer**, click on its button on the STDM toolbar as shown below.



When you click on the **Document Designer** button, the **Document Designer** module loads as shown in the image below.

🛿 STDM Document Designer			-		×
Composer Edit View Layout Atlas Settings					
🗾 🔜 🔣 🖸 🔤 💾 🚰 🛄 🎵 🕫 🗩 🗩 🥭 🖉 🖉 📒 📃					
n 20 40 60 80 120 140 160 180 280 280 280 100 120 140 160 180 201 220 240 260 280	<b>300</b>	saaaaaaaaaa std	M Data Source		<b>&gt;</b>
🕤 👔 taaliintaaliintaaliintaaliintaaliintaaliiitaaliiitaaliiitaaliiitaaliiitaaliiitaaliiitaaliiitaaliiitaaliiitaaliiitaaliiitaaliiitaaliiitaaliiitaaliiitaaliiitaaliiitaaliiitaaliiitaaliiitaaliiitaaliiitaalii	Data Source	De			
	Please select	the name of the so	urce table or view from the o	ptions below	w
					-
R 🛛	Show tab		Show views only		
	Referenced to	able (applicable to v	iews only)		_
- <del>-</del> -					
	Composition	Contraction in the second		1	
			Composition		2225)   
	▼ Page siz	ze			n ľ
8	Presets	A4 (210x297 mm	)		
	Width	297.00		÷ 🗣	
× × 1120	Height	210.00		- -	
	Units	mm			
5 R		n Landscape			
	Unentation	n Lanuscape			
	Resize j	page to content -			— L
180	▼ Page se	ettings			ר ו
	Number of	f pages	1	- C	
8	Page back	around	Change		
	r ugu buck		changen		
	Export :	settings			5
203.623 mm y: 235.373 mm page: 1 50.0%					

The designer will start with an empty white page where you can add different items to create a template.

# **Database Views for Document Templates**

# What is Database View?

**Database View** is just a table that is created using a database query. The query could be from one or more tables. For instance, you can create a view that only shows female party members. This view automatically gets updated when new female party members are added. If we also remove a female from the party table, the record will be removed from the view.

# **STDM Views**

STDM configuration automatically creates **Social Tenure Relationship** Views that lists details of party, spatial unit and tenure related information for party records that are linked to a spatial unit using the <u>Social Tenure Relationship module</u>. The STDM Views are classified into two major groups.

1. **Party views** - are created for each party entity that is participating in STR. **Party Views** contain:

- An auto generated serial id
- The party records data
- The social tenure relationship of the party records

- The spatial unit id they are linked to.
- 2. Spatial Unit view lists all records linked to parties through STR. The Spatial Unit View contains:
- Spatial Unit id as an id column
- All other Spatial Unit record data

These views are very useful to generate documents such as certificates. Ineligible person cannot be listed in the **Social Tenure Relationship Views**, which thus act as a good checking mechanism when issuing a certificate.

#### **View Names**

The STDM **View** name is generated using the following format.

#### [table\_name]\_vw\_social\_tenure\_relationship

In place of the **table\_name**, the table name of the entity is used.

#### **View Layer**

**Spatial Views** in STDM can be visualized as a map layer in QGIS **Map Canvas**. To add a view layer into the **Map Canvas**, follow the steps in <u>Adding a Spatial Entity Layer</u> topic. The only thing you need to do while adding the layer is, identifying the view layer. If you have not set a display name, the layer name looks like your **Spatial Unit** table name followed by **\_vw\_social\_tenure\_relationship**.

#### **Viewing View Data**

Viewing the data of a view is possible using the QGIS **Attribute Table**. Once you add the view layer in the Map Canvas, right-click on the layer in the **Legend** panel and click on Open Attribute Table, as shown in the image below.

Sociosopposopposopposopposopposopposoppos	ð×	
🤞 🏨 🔍 🚏 🖏 🕈 🖬 🖉		
k parcel vw social tenure relationsh     Parcel	<sup>i</sup> 🔎	Zoom to Layer
		Show in Overview
		Remove
		Duplicate
	:	Set Layer Scale Visibility
	:	Set Layer CRS
	:	Set Project CRS from Layer
	:	Styles •
		Open Attribute Table
	1	Toggle Editing
	:	Save As
	:	Save As Layer Definition File
		Filter
		Show Feature Count
		Properties
		Rename
	8	

You will see a table containing the view data.

#### **Custom Views**

**Custom views** refer to views that are created manually by a user. The **STDM views** might not fulfil all your needs. In such cases, you can create custom views. Custom views can help you generate documents for single records. Most importantly, you can create custom views that enable you to produce aggregate reports.

#### **Useful Links**

http://www.postgresqltutorial.com/managing-postgresql-views/

http://www.postgresqltutorial.com/postgresql-views/

# **Tools of Document Designer**

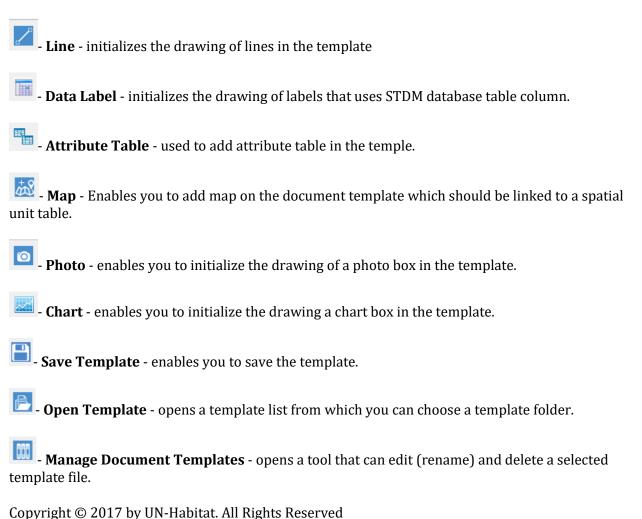
The following sub-topics explain the different components of the **Document Designer**. These tools could be toolbars and panels that are created either by STDM or QGIS.

### **STDM Document Designer Toolbar**

The **Document Designer toolbar** is located at the top of Document Designer. The figure below shows the toolbar.



The tools allow you to perform several tasks. Functionalities of the tools are explained below.



#### **STDM Data Source**

An STDM report must contain a data source which contains data that will be used in the underlying document. Depending on the desired output of the report, the data source can simply be from an STDM table corresponding to an entity or a database view that represents a more complex relationship between different entities such as those participating in a social tenure relationship. In both cases, the data source must include a set of fields that will be used across the report. These data fields can then be used directly in some data-driven items (such as data labels or maps) or be linked

to related fields in other data-driven items (such as attribute table, photo, graphs, etc.). When the report is processed, the data resulting from the queries run on the data source will be dynamically inserted and linked to the corresponding data-driven items based on the item configuration specified at design time.

If you wish to generate a map based document using the default Social Tenure Views, you need to use the Spatial Unit View. However, if you need to include information about the party in the map based document, you can link it through the <u>Attribute Table item</u> instead of <u>Data Label item</u>. However, if your configuration does not allow multiple party records to be linked to a spatial unit record, you can use Party Views as a data source.

This panel enables you to select a table that will be the source for data label, map, attribute table, photo, and chart. One data source should be used for the entire template. Once you choose a data source, every item you add should either use the data source as a source or provide a linking column to another table that provides the content to a template item.

The panel is located in the right side of Document Designer as highlighted in the image below.

sTDM Data Source ata Source sease select the name of the source table or view from the options below Show tables only Show tables only Show views only ferenced table (applicable to views only) ferenced table (applicable to views only) and source ata Source Show tables only Show views only ferenced table (applicable to views only) and source ata Source at the options below atta Source at the options at the options below atta Source at the options at the options at the options at the options atta Source at the option at the options at the options atta Source at the option		CONTRACTOR OF STOM D	ata Source	
ease select the name of the source table or view from the options below Show tables only Show views only ferenced table (applicable to views only) omposition Item properties STDM item properties Composition <b>Page size</b> Presets A4 (210x297 mm) Width 297.00 Height 210.00 Units mm Orientation Landscape <b>Resize page to content</b> <b>Page settings</b> Number of pages 1		STUMU		
Show tables only Show views only ferenced table (applicable to views only) omposition Item properties STDM item properties Composition Page size Presets A4 (210x297 mm) C Width 297.00 Height 210.00 Units mm Orientation Landscape Resize page to content Page settings Number of pages 1	ata Source	1		
ferenced table (applicable to views only)	ase select t	he name of the source	table or view from the op	tions belov
ferenced table (applicable to views only)				
ferenced table (applicable to views only)				
omposition Item properties   STDM item properties   Composition   Presets   A4 (210x297 mm)   Vidth   297.00   Width   297.00   Orientation   Landscape   Page settings   Number of pages   1   Image: Composition				
Item properties STDM item properties   Composition   Presets   A4 (210x297 mm)   Width   297.00   Orientation   Landscape   Page settings   Number of pages   1    The page settings	ferenced tab	ole (applicable to view	s only)	
Item properties STDM item properties   Composition   Presets   A4 (210x297 mm)   Width   297.00   Presets   A4 (210x297 mm)   Image: state preset of the preset				
Composition  Page size  Presets A4 (210x297 mm)  Width 297.00  Height 210.00  Units mm  Orientation Landscape  Resize page to content  Page settings  Number of pages  1	omnosition			
Presets A4 (210x297 mm)   Width 297.00   Height 210.00   Units mm   Orientation Landscape   Resize page to content   Page settings   Number of pages	•	· · ·		
Presets A4 (210x297 mm)   Width 297.00  Height 210.00  Units mm  Orientation Landscape  Resize page to content  Page settings  Number of pages  1		com	posición	
Width 297.00   Height 210.00   Units mm   Orientation Landscape   Resize page to content   Page settings   Number of pages	Page size	3		
Width 297.00   Height 210.00   Units mm   Orientation Landscape   Resize page to content   Page settings   Number of pages	Presets	A4 (210x297 mm)		- 4
Height 210.00 Units mm Orientation Landscape  Resize page to content  Page settings Number of pages  1		[ <b>(</b>		
Units mm  Orientation Landscape  Resize page to content Page settings Number of pages	Width	297.00		- €
Units mm  Orientation Landscape  Resize page to content Page settings Number of pages	Height	210.00		
Orientation Landscape		[		
Resize page to content       Page settings       Number of pages	Units	mm		<b>T</b>
Page settings       Number of pages	Orientation	Landscape		- 🗐
Page settings       Number of pages				
Number of pages	Resize pa	age to content —		
	• Page set	tings		
	North and a feature			
Page background Change	Number of	pages	1	- ' <del>-</del>
	Page backg	round	Change	
	2 0			
	Export se			

### **STDM Item Properties**

The STDM item properties enable you to choose a column that will be used by template items such as data label and photo.

The panel has a drop down menu from which you can choose a column for a given template item.

The **STDM item properties** panel is located in the right side of the STDM Document Designer. The image below illustrates the panel.

	STDM Data Source	×
Data Source		
Please select t	he name of the source table or view from the options below	
in_vw_social_	tenure_relationship	•
Show table	es only   Show views only	_
Referenced tab	le (applicable to views only)	
person		•
Composition	Item properties STDM item properties	
	STDM item properties	. 🗙
Field		
Data Field		-
		-

Copyright © 2017 by UN-Habitat. All Rights Reserved

### Composition

**Composition** enables you to customize the page layout, size, quality and grids. It is also located in the right side of Print Composer.

See the image below.

	Composition	Item properties	STDM item properties			
		configuration Comp	position (contractory)	·····X		
	<ul> <li>Paper and qua</li> </ul>	ality				
	Presets	A4 (210x297	mm)	- E		
Composition	Width	297.00		÷ 🖶		
	Height	210.00		÷ 🖶		
	Units	mm				
	Number of page	es 1		÷ 🖶		
	Orientation	Landscape		•		
	Page backgroun	nd	Change			
	Export resolutio	n 300 dpi		▲ ▼		
	Print as ras	ter				
	World file or	n		-		
	▼ Guides and Gr	id				
	Grid spacing	10.00 mm		<b>^</b>		
		x: 0.00 mm		<b></b>		
	Grid offset	y: 0.00 mm		<b>^</b>		
	Snap tolerance	5 px		<b>•</b>		

#### **Item Properties**

Item properties tab enable you to modify each item on the template with several options such as adding text, alignment, font size and color, margin and so on.

This is useful in modifying the appearance of an item.

The image below shows the **Item properties** panel.

	Composition		STDM item properties		
		reconnection Item p	roperties and a construction of the	unununun 🗙	
	Arrow				
	- Main anna				
	<ul> <li>Main proper</li> </ul>	rues			
		<b></b> L	ine style		
ltem properties	<ul> <li>Position and</li> </ul>	l size			
	Page 1			•	
×	X 34.90	17 mm		•	
	Y 52.20	15 mm			
	Width 1.923	mm			
	Height 1.414	mm		-	
		×			
	Reference po	int 🗌 🗌 🗌			
	Rotation -				
	Frame				
	Backgro	ound			
	Background o				
	▶ Item ID —				
	Rendering				

# **Composer Item Toolbar**

Composer Item toolbar has tools that enable you to add items such as label, image, legend, scale bar, shapes and arrows. In addition, controls for selection, pan and zoom are also found in this toolbar.



Copyright © 2017 by UN-Habitat. All Rights Reserved

# **Customizing a Template Page**

The template page refers to the white box located below the STDM Document Designer toolbar (see the image below).

2	1 🔳 🖬 📾	0 💹 💾 🕞	000			
t ( <sup>(III</sup> )	<u></u>	0,	100	150 200	250	<mark>300</mark>
	<mark>ק-</mark> -					P
	] =					
	-					
						ĺ
n 🛁						Γ
T.	20					
	00-					
10						
	150					
	- 50					

The **Document Designer** by default opens with one page having a landscape page layout.

However, you can modify the page properties using the composer panel located in the right side of the page.

The composer panel's options are illustrated below.

Composition	Item properties	STDM item properties		600 million (1997)
	Cor	nposition		Choose different
Page size				puper sizes inte
<ul> <li>Page size</li> </ul>	3		-	A5, A4, A3, etc
Presets	A4 (210x297 mm)			
Width	297.00			
Height	210.00			
Units	mm		-	Page orientation to choose Landscape and
Orientation	Landscape		-	Portrait
Left	0.00 Bottom	Right 0.		
	Nes	ize page		
Page set	tings			Change number of pages
Number of p	pages	1		
Page backg	round	Chang	je	Change the resolution or
Export se	ettings			quality of the page. The higher
Export resol	lution	300 dpi	÷++	the better.

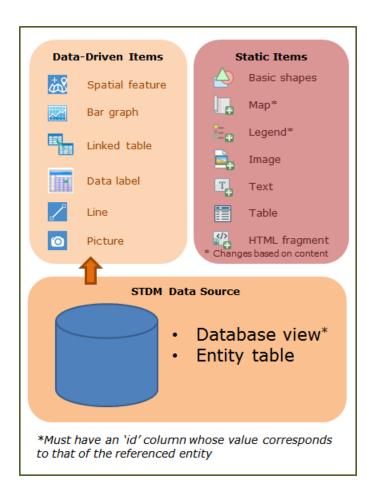
Once you have finished modifying the page, you can add items on the page as explained in <u>Adding</u> <u>Items into a Template topic</u>.

Copyright © 2017 by UN-Habitat. All Rights Reserved

# **Adding Items into a Template**

The Document Designer enables you to add almost anything you may need in your template. You can add items that use STDM database as a source and your own custom inputs such as logos, photos, text, title, backgrounds, etc. that might make the generated certificate attractive and complete.

The diagram below explains the relationship of the STDM data source and the template items that are data driven and static.



Before starting to design, it is good to carry out the following.

- Create a template design on paper or on Microsoft Word Document. This will help you know what you need to add in the template.
- Identify the data source to be used. To know the data source, you can view your record through Entity Browser.
- Have a record already added into the database to test your template.
- Identify your profile social tenure relationship view.

#### **Static Items**

Static items refer to items in the template that do not change. They do not pull content from the STDM database. Static content include line, image, label, shapes, etc.

#### Adding a Line

A line could be used as a separator, signature line, etc. It has no linkage with the STDM database.

To add a line, follow the steps below.

1. Click on the **Add Line** button located in STDM Document Designer Toolbar, as highlighted below.



2. Click at one point in the template page and drag the cursor. When you are satisfied with the light and position of the link, release it.

While dragging it, you can see a red line and a cursor that looks like the plus (+) sign as illustrated in the image below.

When you release the cursor, a black line will be created, as shown below.

3. Adjust the line. The default line that is created may not suit your needs. If that is the case, you can modify the line by changing the size, orientation, colour and style.

Follow the steps below to adjust the line.

A. Change the size of line:

a. Select the line

b. Hover your cursor on top of the boundary of the line.

c. When you see a two directional arrow (see the image below), click on it and move it outwards to increase its size or inwards to reduce its size.

B. Changing the style of the line

a. Click on <u>Item Properties</u> tab as shown below.

		*********	
Composition	Item properties	STDM item properties	
	Item p	properties	<b>x</b>
Arrow			
▼ Main proper	ties		
	🗕 Lir	ne style	
Position and	l size		
▶ Rotation —			
Frame -			
Backgro	und		
▶ Item ID —			
Rendering			
▼ Variables			
Variable	Value		
Project			

b. Click on **Line style** button under Main properties box to launch Symbol selector as shown below.

🧕 Symbol selector		? ×
	Unit Millimeter  Transparency 0%  Width  1.00000 Color	•
= — Line	Symbols in group	Open Library
Simple line	·····	
	Bridlew Canal Canal Constrı Crossir Cycle Dam	Ditch
	Drain Floodw Footpa Jetty Living Locked Motor	Motory
	Pedest Priman Priman Reside Reside River River	Road
♣ = 2 🖬 🔺 🔻	Save	Advanced 🔻
1 M K	ОК	Cancel

**Unit and Width**: Choose a unit and set width under Width using the up and down arrow or by entering a number.

**Transparency**: Change the transparency of the line using the slider.

**Line Symbols**: Change line symbols by choosing from the symbols in the box or by opening the library.

You can do more changes to the line using options under the item properties.

#### Add Image

You can add any external image such as logos, backgrounds, etc into the template.

Follow the steps below to add images.

1. Click on the **Add Image** button located in Composer Item toolbar (see the image below).

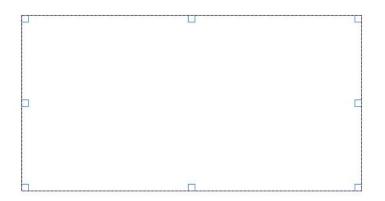


2. Start creating an image box by clicking on one point that will be its top left corner. Then start dragging the cursor to the bottom right direction to expand its size.

While dragging it, you can see a red box and a cursor that looks like the plus (+) sign as illustrated in the image below.



When you release it, a box like the image below will be created.



You can always resize the image box by pressing its corners and moving your cursor.

3. There are two options of adding image. You can add an image by browsing a file by clicking on the indicated button on step 1 or by expanding Search Directories menu and selecting one of the images provided by QGIS.

You can set the resize mode of the image in case the image is bigger than the image box.

You can change the placement of the image inside the image box as shown in step 3 of the image. Middle is recommended.

If you are using icons provided by QGIS, you can change their body and outline colour, and the outline width.

	Composition Item properties STDM item properties	
	Item properties	
	Picture	1. Click on the button to
	▼ Main properties	search and add your image
	Image source	2. Set the resize mode in
	Resize mode	case the image is bigger
	Zoom	than the image box
	Placement	3. Choose the placement of
	Middle	the image in the image box
(Optional) Add icons included if you are not using your own	Search directories Loading previews Loadin	
(Optional) If you have chosen icons of QGIS, you can change their color and outline here	▼ SVG Parameters Fill color Outline color Outline width 0.00 mm	

You can scroll down in item properties and change the image orientation and position.

### Adding a Label

A label here refers to a simple text that could be a title, paragraph, or just a word. This type of label is different from the data label as the text must be manually entered. This is useful when you want to add static contents that will not change. The Add new label tool enables you to add the text box. You then have to type your text and customize it using <u>Item properties</u>.

Follow the steps below to add a label.

1. Click on the Add New Label button located in Composer Item toolbar (see the image below).

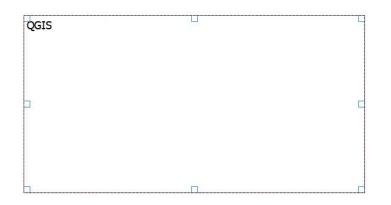


2. Start creating a text box by clicking on one point in the template page that will be its top left corner of the label. Then, start dragging the cursor to the bottom right direction to expand its size.

While dragging it, you will see a red box and a cursor that looks like the plus (+) sign as illustrated in the image below.



When you release the cursor, a box similar to the image below will be created.



The text box could be one line or multiple lines. You can always resize it by pressing its corners and moving the cursor outwards or inwards.

As you can see, the text QGIS is added in the text by default. You can then remove it and replace it with any text you want to add.

3. Add a text and customize it using Item Properties as shown below.

	Composition         Item properties         STDM item properties           Item properties         X	
	Label	
	▼ Main properties	
	QGIS	
Turns the text box into an html box	Render as HTML Insert an expression  Appearance	
	Font Loads Font window	
	Font color	
	Horizontal margin 4.00 mm	
	Vertical margin 1.00 mm	
	Horizontal alignment	
	Left Center Right	
	Vertical alignment     Top Middle Bottom	
	▼ Position and size	

#### **Main Properties**

Copyright © 2017 by UN-Habitat. All Rights Reserved

Under main properties, you can add the text in the white text entry box.

You can also convert the text box into an HTML page where you can add HTML tags to style your text. To enable HTML, you need to check the option **Render as HTML**.

Note: This requires basic knowledge of HTML

For instance, if you type the following in the white text entry box

<strong>QGIS</strong>

You will see the text turned to bold in the template page.

#### Appearance

In the appearance box, you can modify the font and position of the text such as margin and alignments.

To change the font, click on the **Font...** button as indicated in the above image. You will then get the image below.

Modify the font properties and click on the **OK** button.

Font	Font style	Size
MS Shell Dig 2	Normal	10
MS Sans Serif	Normal	7
MS Serif	Bold	8
MS Shell DIg 2	Italic	9
MS UL Gothic	Bold Italic	10
Strikeout	AaE	BbYyZz
Writing System		
Any	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	

## **Data Driven Items**

Data driven item refers to template items that pulls their content from STDM database. The items such as data label, map, legend, photo, attribute table, and chart are data driven.

### **Adding a Data Label**

A data label refers to a label or a text whose value is populated from the STDM database. The source (table and column) of the data label must be specified while designing the template. Thus, when a document is later generated using a template, the data label will be populated / filled by a value from the selected record's column value.

To add a data Label in Document Designer template, follow the steps below.

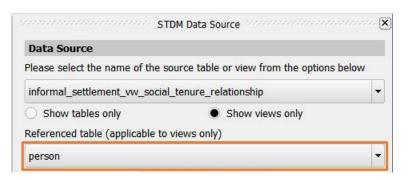
1. Select a data source by choosing a table or a view as shown below.

Data Source		
Please select the name of th	e source table or view from the options below	
informal_settlement_vw_so	cial_tenure_relationship	•
Show tables only Referenced table (applicable)	Show views only	

Note: Only the current profile tables and all views in STDM database load.

**Note**: Make sure you have selected a view of the current profile. STDM generated views start with the profile name. Thus, choose a view that starts with the current profile name.

2. Select a **referenced table**. The **referenced table** option is only applicable for view data source (see the image below). **A referenced table** refers to a table that the template will be working for. In other words, the reference table forces the template to only work for a certain entity. This is useful when <u>Generating a document</u>.



For this demonstration, the Person table is used as a referenced table but you can choose any other based on your needs.

**Note**: The above two steps are mandatory for views and the first step is mandatory for a table data sources.

3. Click on the **Data Label** button located in STDM Document Designer toolbar (see the image below). This enables you to draw a data label in the template.

4. Click at one point in the template page and drag the cursor. Release the cursor in the area you wish to add the label box.

While dragging it, you can see a red box and a cursor that looks like the plus (+) sign as illustrated in the image below.



When you release it, a box labelled [**STDM Data Field**] will be created, as shown below.



This box [**STDM Data Field**] will be replaced by a value that comes from the database.

5. While the box is selected, open the <u>STDM item properties</u> to choose the column, the Data Label will use. The Data Field / column will populate the data label when a document is generated using the template.

	STDM D	ata Source internetion	X
Data Source			
Please select th	e name of the source	table or view from the op	tions below
informal_settle	ment_vw_social_tenu	re_relationship	-
Show tables	s only	Show views only	
Referenced tab	e (applicable to views	s only)	
person			-
Composition	Item properties	STDM item properties	
	STDM iter	m properties	X
Field			
Data Field			-

Choose the column you want the Data Label to use. For instance, for a person, you can choose the **person\_first\_name** column as shown below.

-

When you select a data field, the Data label text will change from [**STDM Data Field**] to the table name you have chosen. See the image below.

[informal settleme

6. Repeat step 4 and 5 to add items from the same view. If you wish to add a data label from another table, start from step 1.

#### **Adding Map**

In STDM, each spatial unit record has a geometry that can be seen in the map canvas. In addition, whenever a new social tenure relationship is created, a row is also added in **table\_name\_vw\_social\_tenure\_relationship** view. The table\_name could be **Party** or **Spatial Unit** table names. The **Spatial Unit view** also adds the geometry of the Spatial Unit. For more information, read <u>Database Views for Document Templates</u> topic.

#### To add a map into the template, follow the steps below.

1. Select a data source by choosing a table or a view as shown below.

Copyright © 2017 by UN-Habitat. All Rights Reserved

Data Source		
Please select the name of the	source table or view from the options	below
informal_settlement_vw_socia	al_tenure_relationship	
Show tables only Referenced table (applicable to	Show views only	
Referenced table (applicable to	o views only)	

**Note**: Only the current profile tables and all views in STDM database load.

**Note**: When choosing a view, make sure you have chosen the view that is created using current profile tables. You can identify that by looking at the profile name at the beginning of view name.

2. Select a **referenced table**. The **referenced table** option is only applicable for view data source (see the image below). **A referenced table** refers to a table that the template will be working for. In other words, the reference table forces the template to only work for a certain entity. This is useful when <u>Generating a document</u>.

Data Source		
Please select the name of the s	source table or view from the options below	
informal_settlement_vw_socia	l_tenure_relationship	-
Show tables only	Show views only	
Referenced table (applicable to	views only)	

For this demonstration, the Person table is used as a referenced table but you can choose any other based on your needs.

**Note**: The above two steps are mandatory for views and the first step is mandatory for table data sources.

3. Click on the **Add Map** button located in STDM Document Designer toolbar (see the image below). This enables you to the draw a data label in the template.



4. Start creating a map box by clicking on one point that will be its top left corner. Then start dragging the cursor to the bottom right direction to expand its size.

While dragging it, you will see a red box and a cursor that looks like the plus (+) sign as shown in the image below.



When you release it, a box like the one below will be created.

Map	will be	printe	d	
	2		C	

5. Make sure you have selected the map as shown in the above image and open the STDM item properties tab as shown below.

	STDM D	ata Source	X
Data Source			
Please select the	e name of the source	table or view from the o	ptions below
informal_settle	ment_vw_social_tenu	ire_relationship	
Show tables	only	Show views only	
Referenced table	e (applicable to views	s only)	
person			•
Composition	Item properties	STDM item properties	
	STDM iter	m properties	×
Spatial Field			- 🔒 🧕
-			
-			

6. Select the **Spatial Field**. The spatial field refers to the column holding a geometry. Choose a geometry column from the drop down menu as shown below.

STDM Data Source
Data Source
Please select the name of the source table or view from the options below
informal_settlement_vw_social_tenure_relationship
Show tables only Show views only
Referenced table (applicable to views only)
person 👻
Composition Item properties STDM item properties
Spatial Field 🔹 🗗

7. Once you have selected the geometry field, click on the Add Button (+) next to the drop down menu, as highlighted below.

	STDM item properties		encontecc v	
Spatial Field	structure_spatial_geometry	-	4	₽

8. Choose the column that will be used as a label for the legend in the highlighted drop down menu below. **Legend label** refers to a column that will be used to label the geometry. For instance, if the map is for a spatial unit entity, its label field could be its name or code.

	su ucture_spa	tial_geometr	y	-	P
ucture_s	sp <mark>atial_geome</mark> t	try 🛛			
Legend	Label:				
	he field whose er legend	value will be	used to label	the feature in	n the
					•
Featur	e Zoom:				
Specify of the n	the zoom out nap	level of the fe	eature relative	to the fulll ex	tent
	1.1.247				

9. Change the **Feature Zoom**. The Feature Zoom refers to the zoom level of features as compared to the map area. If the value is 1, it means, the feature will fill the entire map area. If the value is 16, it zooms out the feature and reduce the feature coverage in the map. For spatial units, zoom level 1 or 2 is recommended to fill most part of the map (see the image below).

Spaua	l Field	S	ruc	ure_s	pauc	n_ge	ometry	(			Ľ		1
stru	cture_	sp	atial	_geor	netry								
	egeno	d L	abe	el:									
	Select t				se v	alue	will be	used t	o label	the fea	ature	e in the	8
	structu	ure	_co	de								•	
F	eatur	e	Zoo	m:									
	Specify of the r			om o	ut lev	vel of	the fe	ature	elative	to the	fulll	extent	
	1											<b>•</b>	

10. Click on the Style tab at the bottom to modify the style of the map (see the image below).

STDM item properties
Spatial Field structure_spatial_geometry 🔹 🖶 🧕
structure_spatial_geometry 🛛
Legend Label:
Select the field whose value will be used to label the feature in the composer legend
structure_code
Feature Zoom:
Specify the zoom out level of the feature relative to the full extent of the map
1
General Style

11. If the default style does not suit you, modify the style. The style tab looks like the image below.

All the settings below modify the appearance of the feature.

patia	I Field structu	re_spatial_geometry	
stru	icture_spatial_(	geometry 🗵	
Γ	Colors	Fill 📃 🔽 Border 🕅	F
	Colors	Fill Border	
	Fill style	Solid	
	Border style	Solid Line	1111
	Join style	Revel	
	Border width	0.260000	L
	Offset X,Y	0.000000	
4			]

### **Adding a Legend**

A legend shows colour and symbol used in a map and its representing field. Accordingly, we need to add a map first before creating a legend.

To create a legend, follow the steps below.

1. Add a map as explained in <u>Adding a Map topic</u>.

2. Click on the **Add new legend** button located in Composer Item toolbar (see the image below).



3. Start creating a legend box by clicking on one point in the template page that will be its top left corner of the legend. Then start dragging the cursor to the bottom right direction to expand its size.

While dragging it, you will see a red box and a cursor that looks like the plus (+) sign as shown in the image below.



When you release it, a box like the image below will be created.

Copyright © 2017 by UN-Habitat. All Rights Reserved



You can always resize the legend box by pressing its corners and moving your cursor outwards or inwards.

4. Set the legend options in Item Properties (see the image below).

The most important option in the Item Properties is the selection of the map that will be linked to the legend.

Composition I	tem properties	STDM item properties		
	Item	properties		
egend			1. Set the title of the	Leger
<ul> <li>Main propert</li> </ul>	ies			
Title	Legend			
Title alignment:	Left			
Мар	None		2. Choose the map that is linked to the legend	
Wrap text on				

If you only have one map, clicking on the drop down, will enable you to see Map 0. Thus, you have to choose Map 0. If you have more than one map, you have to know with which map you are linking the legend. To identify the map's name, click on the map and go to **Item Properties** tab. At the beginning of the tab, you will see the map's name (see the image below).

Composition	Item properties	STDM item properties	
	Item	properties	
Map 1			
<ul> <li>Main prop</li> <li>Rectangle</li> </ul>	erties	<ul> <li>▼ Update pr</li> </ul>	eview
Scale	715		

As the above image shows, the map's name is **Map 1**.

Copyright © 2017 by UN-Habitat. All Rights Reserved

### **Adding Photo**

A photo could be any image that is uploaded as a supporting document in the entity editor/ form and the new social tenure relationship wizard. This feature is very useful when you wish to attach documents or photos inside a generated document.

To add photo, follow the steps below.

1. Select a data source by choosing a table or a view as shown below.

Data Source	e				
Please select	the name of	the source ta	able or vie	w from the opt	ions below
informal_set	ttlement_vw_	social_tenure	_relations	ship	
O Show tat	oles only		Show	v views only	
Referenced t	able (applicat	ole <mark>to v</mark> iews o	only)		

Note: Only the current profile tables and all views in STDM database load.

**Note**: When choosing a view, make sure you have chosen the view that is created using current profile tables. You can identify that by looking at the profile name at the beginning of view name.

2. Select a referenced table if you have chosen a view in the data sources as shown above (see the image below). A referenced table refers to a table that the template will be working for. In other words, the reference table forces the template to only work for a certain entity. This is useful when <u>Generating a document</u>.

oboobboobboobboobboobboobboobboobboobb	IDM Data Source
Data Source	
Please select the name of the s	source table or view from the options below
informal_settlement_vw_socia	I_tenure_relationship
Show tables only	Show views only
Referenced table (applicable to	views only)
person	-

For this demonstration, the Person table is used as a referenced table but you can choose any other based on your needs.

**Note**: The above two steps are mandatory for views and the first step is mandatory for table data sources.

3. Click on the **Add Photo** button located in STDM Document Designer toolbar (see the image below).

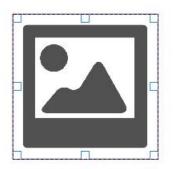
# 📝 🔳 🏪 🔣 💿 🔜 💾 🖳 📖

4. Start creating a photo box by clicking on one point in the template page that will be its top left corner of the photo. Then start dragging the cursor to the bottom right direction to expand its size.

While dragging it, you can see a red box and a cursor that looks like the plus (+) sign as shown in the image below.



When you release it, a box like the one below will be created.



5. Make sure you have selected the photo box as shown in the above image and open the STDM item properties tab as shown below.

hoto	Entity supporting
Linked Table Properties	Document table
References	The data source column linking the supporting document table
Referencing	The entity supporting document column linking the data source

**References** refers to an entity supporting document table name that contains the reference of a supporting document uploaded to an entity. An entity supporting document table is created by STDM with the following format.

#### profile\_prefix\_entity\_name\_supporting\_document.

For instance, a Social Tenure Relationship supporting document looks like

#### lo\_social\_tenure\_relationship\_supporting\_document.

lo refers to the profile prefix of Local Government profile.

**Data source** field refers to a data source column that is also included in the entity supporting document table.

**Referencing** refers to the entity supporting column linking the data source, which has similarity with Data source field in its function here.

**Document type** refers to the supporting document type that you have specified in the Configuration Wizard. The default document type is General. If you add more document types for a given entity, you find them listed in the **Document type** drop down menu.

Make your selection similar to the one shown in the image below.

hoto		
Linked Table Prop	erties	
References	in_social_tenure_relationship_supporting_document	•
Data source field	social_tenure_relationship_id	•
Referencing	social_tenure_relationship_id	•

For instance, the above selections will enable you to properly add documents used for social tenure relationship. If you want to use a supporting document of another entity, look for your entity name in place of **social\_tenure\_relationship**.

#### **Adding Attribute Table**

Attribute table refers to a table that holds non-spatial data. Attribute table can be used for a single row record or aggregate data. It is created from a specific database table or view.

To create an attribute table, follow the steps below.

1. Select a data source by choosing a table or a view as shown below.

Data Source	
Please select the name of the s	ource table or view from the options below
local_government_vw_social_t	enure_relationship
Show tables only	Show views only
Show tables only	
Referenced table (applicable to	views only)

**Note**: Only the current profile tables and all views in STDM database load.

**Note**: When choosing a view, make sure you have chosen the view that is created using current profile tables. You can identify that by looking at the profile name at the beginning of view name.

2. Select a referenced table if you have chosen a view in the data sources (see the image below). A referenced table refers to a table that the template will be working for. In other words, the reference table forces the template to only work for a certain entity. This is useful when <u>Generating a document</u>.

Data Source		
Please select the name of the s	ource table or view from the options below	
informal_settlement_vw_socia	l_tenure_relationship	
Show tables only	Show views only	
Referenced table (applicable to	views only)	

For this demonstration, the Person table is used as a referenced table but you can choose any other based on your needs.

**Note**: The above two steps are mandatory for views and the first step is mandatory for table data sources.

3. Click on the **Add attribute table** button located in STDM Document Designer toolbar (see the image below).



4. Start creating a table box by clicking on one point in the template page that will be its top left corner of the table. Then start dragging the cursor to the bottom right direction to expand its size.

While dragging it, you can see a red box and a cursor that looks like the plus (+) sign.



When you release it, a sample table is created (see the image below). This table changes based on your selection in **STDM item properties.** 

b.	Code	Area	Value	Parcel Type	Landuse	Special Landuse	Dispute
25	tesfdsf	0	0	2	0	2	0
26	add	0	0	0	2	0	0
27	add	0	0	0	0	0	0
28	rem	0	0	0	0	0	0
-19	add2	0	0	0	0	0	0

5. Make sure you have selected the table box as shown in the above image. Proceed to open the STDM item properties tab as shown below.

Table		
Once you specify the he table's propertie	e source table, click on the 'Item Properties' tab to configure s.	The table from which a table data is taken from
References	local_government_vw_social_tenure_relationship	The data source column
Data source field	id 🔹	linking the references
Referencing	id 🔹	<b>T I I</b>
		The references column that is used in the data source

**References** refers to any table that is used as a data source of the table. Here you will find all tables and views of the current profile. Choose a table that you want the table data to be based on.

**Data source field** refers to a data source column that is used to link the reference with the data source table.

**Referencing** refers to the references table column linking the data source, which has similarity with Data source field in its function here.

6. The attribute table is created based on the data source and properties you have set. See an unformatted attribute table below.

<pre>&gt;bcial_tenure_relationship_ic</pre>	social_tenure_relationship_tenure_type						person_date_of_birth			
1	Ownership	1	Alice	Akeno	Tya	Female		Married	3454364	07115160
	Leasehold	3	James		Mucheni	Male		Married	686786	 07215166
3	Leasehold	2	dement	Echoto	Peter	Male		Married	6785678	07110160
1	Communal	5	Peter	L.	Emeri	Male		Di vorced	342214	07144160

The rest of the steps show how you can format the table.

7. Style and format the attribute table. The table is formatted and styled using Item properties tab, as shown below.

Copyright © 2017 by UN-Habitat. All Rights Reserved

Composition Item properties STDM item properties X Item properties Attribute table \* Main properties Attributes... + Margin 1.00 mm ▼ Feature filtering Limit number of rows in a Maximum rows 5 \$ table Show only visible features Not applicable – leave it Composer map \* ▼ X Show grid ◄ Line width 0.50 mm Show/hide table grid Color Thickness of the grid lines Fonts and text styling Color of the grid lines Table heading Choose font... Font Color . Table header styles • Follow column alignment Alignment Table contents Font Choose font... •

See the descriptions on the image below.

To make style changes, refer to the above image on the **Item properties** and scroll down to make more changes.

To format the attribute table, click on the **Attributes...** button that is highlighted in the above image of the Item properties.

When you click on Attributes... button, you will see the following window.

	Attribute	Heading	Alignment
0	123I_tenure_relationship_id ▼ 8	social_tenure_relationship_id	Middle left
1	social_tenure_relationship_tenure	social_tenure_relationship_tenure	Middle left
2	id	id	Middle left
3	person_first_name	person_first_name	Middle left
4	person_middle_name	person_middle_name	Middle left
5	nercon last name	nercon lact name	Middle left
	ting ial_tenure_relationship_id  v	Ascending	<u>ج</u>
	ting		▼ 🔁 Sort Order

The buttons of **Attributes** dialog are explained below.

		elect attributes			?
	Colu	mns			
		Attribute	Heading	Alignment	
	0	123I_tenure_relationship_id ▼ 8	social_tenure_relationship_id	Middle left	
	1	social_tenure_relationship_tenure	social_tenure_relationship_tenure	Middle left	
	2	id	id	Middle left	
a selected column	3	person_first_name	person_first_name	Middle left	
a row where you have	4	person_middle_name	person_middle_name	Middle left	
noose a column name	5	norcon lact name	nercon lact name	Middle left	
selected column Down		Attribute		Sort Order	
selected column Down		Attribute		Sort Order	
	7				
to the table's original					
to the table's original					
to the table's original					
to the table's original					
to the table's original					
to the table's original					

#### a. Adding a column

By default, all the columns in a table are loaded. You may need to remove unwanted columns to create your final table.

If you accidentally remove columns that you might require, you can add them using the add button as shown in the above image.

An empty newly added column looks like the image shown below.

	A Statistic Control of Control	Middle left
6 person_physical_ad	ddress person_physical_addre	ess Middle left
7	3 -	Middle left

You then have to choose the column by clicking on and choosing columns from a drop down menu as shown below.

F	person_physical_address			person_physical_address		Middle left
	مر ا	-	3			Middle left
1	123 social_tenurelationship_id					
A	abc social_tenurtenure_type 123 id		t	]		
	<pre>abc person_first_name</pre>	500				
	abc person_middle_name	1				
	abc person_last_name abc person_gender_id		•	Ascending	•	÷
	person_date_of_birth abc person_marital_status					Sort Order
	abc person national id	÷				

b. Removing columns that are not needed

To remove a column, select on a row and click on the Remove button.

b. Formatting the column names

Columns of STDM database or any other database have an underscore instead of spaces and lower cases instead of title cases. This may not be desirable in the generated document.

The appearance of the column can be changed in the Attributes dialog by manually typing preferred heading of the column under the Heading as highlighted in the image below.

	Attribute	Heading	Alignment
0	person_first_name	First Name	Middle left
1	person_middle_name	Middle Name	Middle left
2	person_last_name	Last Name	Middle left
3	person_gender_id	Gender	Middle left
4	parcel_code	Parcel Code	Middle left
5	person_national_id	National ID	Middle left
6	person_physical_address	Physical Address	Middle left

c. Change alignment of columns by choosing your preferred alignment under the Alignment column.

8. Once you are done, click on the **OK** button of the attributes dialog to save and close the dialog. See the image below.

	Attribute	Heading	Alignment
0 p	erson_first_name	First Name	Middle left
1 p	erson_middle_name	Middle Name	Middle left
2 p	erson_last_name	Last Name	Middle left
з р	erson_gender_id	Gender	Middle left
4 p	arcel_code	Parcel Code	Middle left
5 p	erson_national_id	National ID	Middle left
_			
		Physical Address	Middle left
▲ orti	Re		Middle left
▲ orti	Ing	eset	
orti	ing son_physical_address	eset	▼
orti	ing son_physical_address	eset	▼
orti	ing son_physical_address	eset	▼
orti	ing son_physical_address	eset	▼
▲ iorti	ing son_physical_address	eset	·····································

9. Once you click on the **OK** button, the table gets updated. The image below shows the final table customized on the bases of above steps.

First Name	Middle Name	Last Name	Gender	Parcel Code	National ID	Physical Address
Alice	Akeno	Туа	Female	1	3454364	
James	e	Mucheni	Male	1	686786	
dement	Echoto	Reter	Male	1	6785678	
Peter	ι.	Emeri	Male	1	342214	

**Note**: Currently, due to a bug in QGIS Print Composer, the formatting will be lost if you open the template again.

Thus, it is advised to format the table before saving the template for the last time.

### **Adding a Chart**

You can add charts whose data is derived from the STDM database. Currently, only vertical bar graphs are supported. More chart types will be added in the next major release.

The charts are best suited for an aggregate data. This requires the creation of more views linked to the default view that comes with STDM. The steps below will enable you understand how to create a basic view. The steps in creating an advanced chart are similar to those elaborated below. However, you will need to add more views that are linked to the default view.

To add charts that use STDM database, follow the steps below.

1. Select a data source by choosing a table or a view as shown below.

Data Source		
Please select the name of th	ne source table or view from the options below	v
informal_settlement_vw_so	ocial_tenure_relationship	
Show tables only	Show views only	
Referenced table (applicable	e to views only)	

Note: Only the current profile tables and all views in STDM database will load.

**Note**: When choosing a view, make sure you have chosen the view that is created using current profile tables. You can identify that by looking at the profile name at the beginning of view name.

2. Select a referenced table if you have chosen a view in the data sources as shown above (see the image below). A referenced table refers to a table that the template will be working for. In other words, the reference table forces the template to only work for a certain entity. This is useful when <u>Generating a document</u>. When we choose the referenced table, it means we are forcing the template only work for the selected reference table.

Data Source		
Please select the name of the	source table or view from the options belov	v
informal_settlement_vw_socia	al_tenure_relationship	
Show tables only Referenced table (applicable to	<ul> <li>Show views only o views only)</li> </ul>	
person		

For this demonstration, the Person table is used as a referenced table but you can choose any other based on your needs.

**Note**: The above two steps are mandatory for views and the first step is mandatory for table data sources.

3. Click on the **Add Photo** button located in STDM Document Designer toolbar (see the image below). This enables you to add an image that is uploaded into STDM.

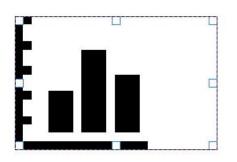


4. Start creating a chart box by clicking on one point in the template page that will be its top left corner of the chart. Then start dragging the cursor to the bottom right direction to expand its size.

While dragging it, you can see a red box and a cursor that looks like the plus (+) sign as shown in the image below.



When you release it, a box like the image below will be created.



5. Make sure you have selected the chart box as shown in the above image and open the **STDM item properties** tab. You will see the following.

Chart		
Туре	Vertical Bar	·
Data Source		The table from which a chart data is taken from
References	in_structure	The data source column
Data source field	d structure_id	linking the references
Referencing	id	The references column t
<ul> <li>Series Proper</li> </ul>	ties	is used in the data source
X field		
code		•
X label		
Code		
Y label		
Ownership Type		

**References** refers to any table that is used as a data source of the chart. You will find all tables and views of the current profile. Choose a table that you want the chart data to be based on.

**Data source field** refers to a data source column that is used to link the reference with the data source table.

**Referencing** refers to the references table column linking the data source, which has similarity with Data source field in its function here.

6. Choose Series Properties, which refers to the X axis field and the Y axis label in the chart.

STDM item properties	
Chart	
Type 🔹 Vertical Bar	
▼ Data Source	
References in_structure	
Data source field structure_id	
Referencing id	
▼ Series Properties	
X field	The column to be used as a
code	source of value for the X axis
X label	
Code	The label of the X axis
Y label	
Ownership Type	The label of the Y axis

The fields and labels in the above image refers to the following.

**X Field** refers to the column to be used as a source of data for the X- axis.

**X label** refers to the label of the X-axis.

**Y label** refers to the label of the Y-axis.

Proceed to choose the Y-axis field in the next box explained in the next step.

7. Choose the value field (Y-axis value source column), legend name, and chart colour.

Value field	ownership_type	<u> </u>		
ownerst	ip_type 🗵			
Fill color			2. Add the selected valu	e fi
Legend r	ame Ownership Type		1. Choose the column to used as a source of value the Y axis	
Graph Pro	perties			
	Structure Ownership Type			
Fitle				
Title	legend			

**Value field** refers to the Y-axis value (see in the image above). The selected column in this case is *ownership\_type* but you can choose any other column you wish.

**Fill colour** refers to the colour of the bar in the chart. Click on the **blue box** and choose other colours if you would like to change it.

**Legend name** refers to the title of the legend box. Normally, this refers to the Y-axis value/ the Value field.

8. Choose the graph properties by adding title of the chart, and by enabling and setting the position of the legend. See the image below.

Value Config	guration:	
Value field	ownership_type	
ownership	_type 🗵	
Fill color		
Legend nar	ne Ownership Type	
🔻 Graph Prope	erties	1.00
Title Str	ucture Ownership Type	
X Insert le	gend	
Position	Automatic 🗸	
		1

If you do not check **Insert legend checkbox**, the legend will not be shown in the generated document.

The default position of the legend is **Automatic**, which means, it will be placed anywhere in the chart area where there is a space. This is recommended to avoid overlapping of the legend with the chart bars. You can also choose other positions by clicking on the drop down menu.

## **Managing a Template**

After adding different items into the template as discussed in <u>Adding Items into a Template topic</u>, you have to save it so that you can use it to generate a document.

## Saving a Template

To save a file follow the steps below.

1. Click on the **Save** button located in **STDM Document Designer Toolbar**, as highlighted below.



2. A popup appears. Type a file name of the template and press the **OK** button.

Template N	?	×
Please enter the tem	plate nar	ne belov
Please enter the tem	plate nar	ne belov

The file is saved in the template folder as specified in the Configuration Wizard or Options.

## **Opening a Template**

To open a template file, follow the steps below.

1. Click on the **Open Document Template** button located in STDM Document Designer Toolbar, as highlighted below.

	🚵 💿 💹	8	000
--	-------	---	-----

2. A dialog opens with the list of existing templates (see the image blow). Choose the template you would like to open and click on the **OK** button.

] a1	•
allocation_document_te	emplate
] at attrib table	
c2	
) c3	
chart final	
first name	

The template loads in a new Document Designer window.

## **Editing File Name and Deleting a Template**

Editing of template file names and deleting of template is done in the same dialog.

To edit a file name, follow the steps below.

1. Click on the Manage Document Template button located in STDM Document Designer Toolbar, as highlighted below.

Copyright © 2017 by UN-Habitat. All Rights Reserved

	124 121	±%	0	~~	B	Þ	000	
--	------------	----	---	----	---	---	-----	--

2. Template Manager opens up as shown below.

ect a document template from the list be	
al	📥 🥜 Edit
allocation_document_template	
at attrib table	I Delete
c2	
c3	Close
chart	Close
final	
first_name	
infor sett	
map_photo	

3. Select on one of the templates listed in the white box.

4. If you want to change the file name, click on the **Edit** button. This will load the selected template name in an editable box (see the image below).

😲 Ed	it Template	?	×	E
ri Please	enter the new ten table	nplate nan	ne below	)e
ər	ОК	Ca	ncel	0
tname			-	_

Then, modify the name and press the **OK** button to change the file name.

Follow the steps below to delete a template file.

- 1. Open the Template manager
- 2. Select a template you want to delete.
- 3. Click on the **Delete** button on the right side of the Template Manager.
- 4. A popup appears warning you not to delete the template (see the image below).



If you still want to delete the file, click on the **Yes** button. If you are not sure, click on the **No** button.

# **Tips and Workarounds**

While using **the Document Designer** you might face issues that could prevent you from using Document Designer. These issues are because of the limited flexibility of QGIS Print Composer on which the Document Designer is based on. This limitation will be resolved in QGIS 3.0.

These issues can be resolved through tips and workarounds that are listed below.

1. Do not generate a document using a template that is open in Document Designer. This will block you from adding any more items into the template. To fix the issue, close and open the Document Designer and open the template.

2. The attribute table formatting will be lost when re-opening a saved template. This is a QGIS **Print Composer** known issue. Thus, it is recommended to add the formatting of the attribute table before saving the template for the last time to avoid re-formatting it.

## Learn More about QGIS Print Composer

As already discussed, Document Designer is built on top of QGIS Print Composer. Thus, learning more about QGIS Print Composer will help you understand Document Designer.

Visit the Print Composer documentation page by clicking on the link below.

**QGIS User Manual - Print Composer** 

Copyright © 2017 by UN-Habitat. All Rights Reserved

# **Generating Documents Using Templates**

Generating a report is an important component in STDM that is pivotal for the dissemination of information on land. This information will be used in various ways for example in the making of informed decisions, good management of resources, security of tenure, etc.

Once you have created a template using <u>Document Designer</u>, you can use Document Generator to generate documents in file formats such PDF and different image formats.

The generation of documents is based on entities and database views that are used as a data source to design the template.

You can generate documents for selected records. This is mainly applicable when you want to generate documents such as certificates of ownership, title deeds, allocation document for a party or a spatial unit. In addition, you can even generate a letter based on a record entry in STDM. For instance, in a local government setting, a letter template can be designed to be used for a confirmation of survey on a parcel that can then be used for approval. For this purpose, you can use the Survey and related entities as a data source in local government profile included in STDM 1.4 installation. The letter could have information that shows a survey date, the applicant, the surveyor and the location with a field for signatures.

You can also generate documents that are used for reporting purposes. The document templates could be designed from a database view created from custom queries that provide aggregate information. Aggregate views are not created in STDM by default as user requirements vary. Currently, only social tenure relation view is created. Using aggregate views, you can create templates that use charts.

To generate a report based on the designed template follow the steps below.

**1.** On the STDM toolbar, select **Document Generator** button.



The Document Generator module loads as shown below.

🤨 Document Generator				?	×
Click on the plus button below to a Person Structure	add a reco	rd from the da	tabase.		
	ast Name	National ID	Gender	Date Of Birt	th N
					()
Use matching records in data	source def	fined in docum	ent templ	ate	
Select document temp	late				
Output Type:					
Export as Image     Export as PDF		bmp			•
Write to output folder					
-Output Document Naming:	vill be used	i to name the	output do	cument files.	
First Name Middle Name Last Name National ID Gender Date Of Birth					
			Generate	Clo	se

The top part of the dialog has tabs that represents all the core entities (see the image below). If you add a new entity in the Configuration Wizard, a new tab will be added automatically.

rst Name Middle Name Last Name National ID Gender Date Of Birth	+	8					
	First Name	Middle Name	Last Name	National ID	Gender	Date Of Birth	1

2. If you are generating a document using aggregate data, proceed to step 4.

Copyright © 2017 by UN-Habitat. All Rights Reserved

On the top part of the entity tab, click on the **Add** button (+) to add a record whose details you wish to appear in the generated document.

The **Entity Browser** appears so that you can select a record of the entity.

3. Select a record using the Entity Browser dialog or the QGIS Expression dialog.

### A. Adding a record using the Entity Browser dialog

The image below shows how you can select a record using the **Entity Browser**.

					L	
Fir	st Name /	Middle Name	Last Name	National ID	Gender	Date O
1 Alic	e	Akeno	Tya	3454364	Female (F)	11/22/65
2 Cler	ment	Echoto	Peter	6785678	Male (M)	11/20/65
3 Dav	id	Enyaman	Ewoton	7686587	Male (M)	11/19/65
Jam	ies	A	Mucheni	68678 <mark>6</mark>	Male (M)	11/21/65
5 Mar	k	В	Johnston	46y536534	Male (M)	07/23/16
6 Pete	er	L.	Emeri	342214	Male (M)	11/23/65
7 Pete	er	Mena	Maco	453535	3. Click the ( button	Close
Look Fo	r Type the filte	i er keyword here			nn First Name Select	Close

In case you have large records, you can first make a search as discussed in <u>Querying a Record topic</u>.

If you want to add multiple records that are not continuous, follow the sub-steps below.

a. Press the **Control** (Ctrl) key on your keyboard

b. While still pressing the **Control** key, select records you want to add.

If you want to add multiple records between two rows, follow the sub-steps below

a. Select a record that will be the first selection in the range.

b. Press the Shift key on your keyboard

c. While still pressing the **Shift** key, select the last row in the selection range

Family Name	Other Names	Address	Identification	ntact Telepho	Gender	4arital Statu
Peter	James	2342342	423423	asdrfa		1

If you want to remove records that are already added, select it and click on the remove icon (<sup>3</sup>).

### B. Adding a record using QGIS Expression dialog

The sub-steps below show how you can select a record using the **QGIS Expression** dialog.

a. Select the Expression button located inside the **Document Generator** next to the **Add** button as shown below.

🧕 Docum	👰 Document Generator ?								
Click on the	plus button	below to add	a record	from th	e databa	ise.			
Person	Parcel	Surveyor	Planne	er S	Survey				
+									
First Nam	e Middle I	Name Last	Name 0	Gender	Date O	f Birth	Marital S	Status	
	-								

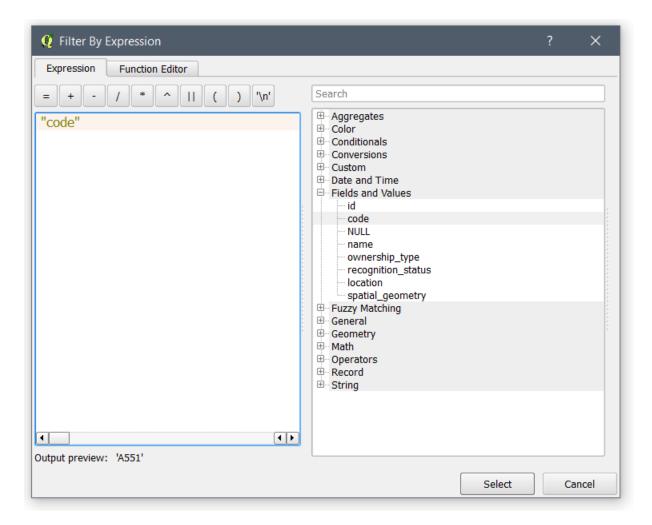
The QGIS Expression dialog opens as shown in the image below.

🤨 Filter By Expression		?	×
Expression Function Editor			
= + - / * ^    ( ) "\n'	Search		
Image:	<ul> <li>Aggregates</li> <li>Color</li> <li>Conditionals</li> <li>Conversions</li> <li>Custom</li> <li>Date and Time</li> <li>Fields and Values</li> <li>Fuzzy Matching</li> <li>General</li> <li>Geometry</li> <li>Math</li> <li>Operators</li> <li>Record</li> <li>String</li> <li>Recent (Person)</li> </ul>		
	Select	Cano	cel

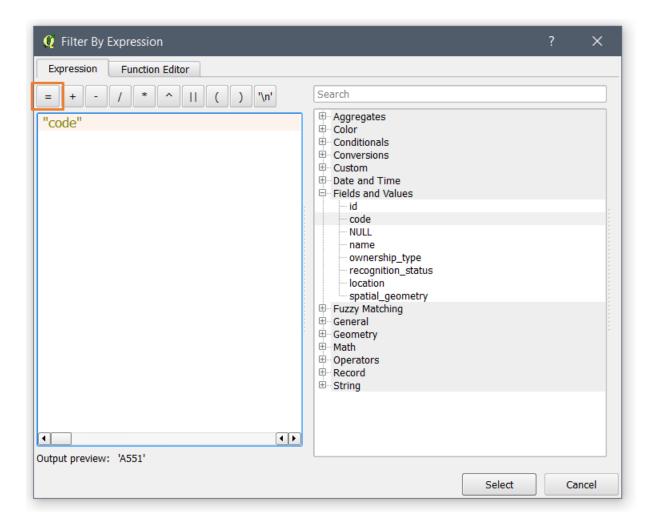
b. On the right side, expand the **Fields and Values** tree item as shown in the image below. You will see all the columns/fields of the selected **Entity**.

🧕 Filter By Expression	?	×
Expression Function Editor		
= + - / * ^    ( ) '\n'	Search	
	Aggregates     Aggregates     Color     Conditionals     Conversions     Date and Time     Fields and Values     Id     code     NULL     area     value     parcel_type_id     landuse_id     location     spatial_geometery     General     Geometry     Math     Operators     Code     Nuth     String	
Output preview:	Select	Cancel

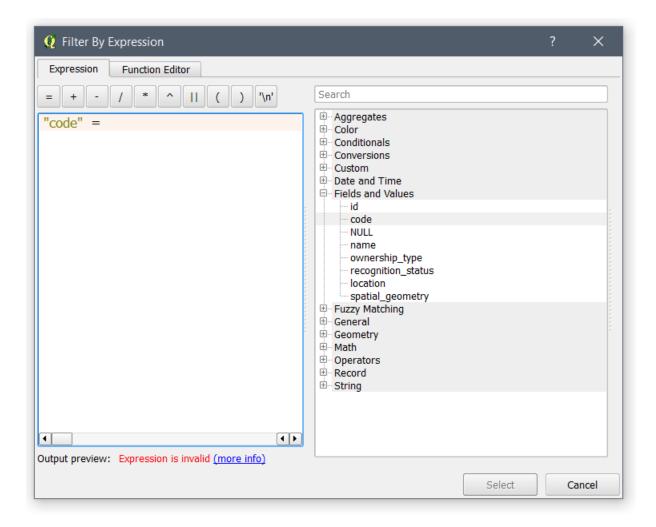
c. Double click on one field/ column you would like to use as a search filter. The field will be added in the white box in the left side as shown below. In this case, "code" is used.



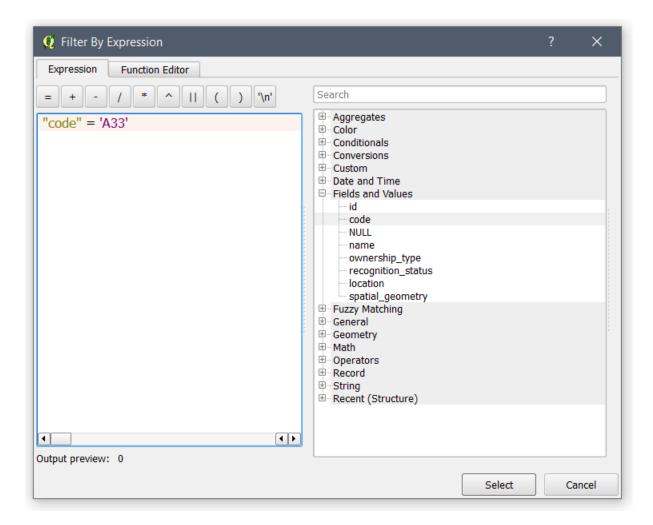
d. Click on the relevant sign you want to use. In this case the equal (=) operator is used as highlighted in the image below.



e. When you click on the sign, you will see the sign added as shown in the image below.



f. Type the value you would like to search as shown in the image below. In this case, it should be a relevant value for the **code** column.



**Note**: textual data should be written in between single quotes, as shown above. Numeric data should be written without quote.

g. Click on the **Select** button to load the record into the Document Generator, **Entity Record Selector** as shown in the image below.

Pe	erson	Structu		cord from the database	
4		8			
	Code	Name	Ownership Type	Related Structures	Recognition Status
1	A33	House 33	Private Individual	Kitchen	Yes

If you want to remove records that are already added, select it and click on the remove icon (<sup>(2)</sup>).

4. If you are using templates that are designed for aggregate data reporting, check on the option (highlighted below).

🦉 Document Generator				?	×
Click on the plus button below to ad Person Structure	d a reco	ord from the da	itabase.		
First Name Middle Name Las	t Name	National ID	Gender	Date Of Birt	h N
					٩Þ
Use matching records in data so Template:		fined in docum	ent templ	ate	_
Select document templa	te				
Export as Image     Export as PDF		bmp			•
Write to output folder Output Document Naming: Select the fields whose values wil	be use	d to name the	output do	cument files.	
First Name Middle Name Last Name National ID Gender Date Of Birth					4
			Generate	Clo	se

6. Select a **document template** that you want your generated document to be based on.

To select a document template, click on **Select document template** button as highlighted below.

Person	Structure 😢					
First Name	Middle Name	Last Name	National ID	Gender	Date Of Birth	
•		-			6	Ф
	iing records in di	ata source del	fined in docum	ent templ	ate	
Template:						
-	lect document te	emplate	Í.			_
📄 Se		emplate				
Output Typ	e:	emplate				
Output Typ	e: s Image	emplate	bmp			
Output Typ	e: s Image	emplate	bmp bg			
Output Typ Export a Export a	e: s Image	emplate				
Se Output Typ Export a Xvrite to out	ve: s Image s PDF					
Se Output Typ Export a Export a Write to or Output Door	e: s Image s PDF utput folder	12	6	output do	cument files.	
Se Output Typ Export a Dutput to or Output Doc Select the file First Na	e: s Image s PDF utput folder cument Naming elds whose value ime	12	6	output do	cument files.	
Se Output Typ Export a Vrite to or Output Door Select the fil	e: s Image s PDF utput folder cument Naming elds whose value ime Name me	12	6	output doe	cument files.	

A template selector appears showing all templates designed for the current entity.

elect a document template t	from the list below
) c2	<b>.</b>
C3	
chart	200
first_name	
infor_sett map_photo	
map_prioto	
marital st	-
pic	-

Click on the template you want to use and click on the **OK** button.

**Note**: Only matching templates to the selected entity load. For instance, a template that used **Person** as a Referenced table in <u>STDM Data Source</u> of document designer will not be visible when you want to generate documents by selecting a **Structure** record.

7. Choose the output format of the generated document. You can choose several **image formats** or a **PDF** format as shown below.

If you have chosen the Export as Image radio button, the image format drop down menu becomes active. You can then select an image format that you want (as shown below).

Export as Image	bmp	
O Export as PDF	bmp	
0 -4	ico	
Write to output folder	jpeg jpg png	
Output Document Naming:	ppm tif	
Select the fields whose values will be used to name		
Family Name Other Names	xbm xpm	
Address		

8. Set the saving location and the file name of the document.

You can save the generated document either in a location that you have chosen or in the output folder as specified in the Configuration Wizard or Options.

### A. Saving in preferred location

If you wish to save it in a location that you have chosen, make sure Write to output folder options is unchecked.

Click on the **Generate** button.

A Windows Explorer pops up so that you choose the file name and location of the document to be generated (as shown below).

Document Generator	?	×		
🤨 Save Document				
$\leftarrow \rightarrow \checkmark \uparrow$ ] > This	PC > Documents > docments	v Ö	Search docments	
Organize   New folder				
<ul> <li>This PC</li> <li>E Desktop</li> </ul>		No items match your search.		
> 🖹 Documents				
<ul> <li>&gt; Iso Downloads</li> <li>&gt; Music</li> <li>&gt; Iso Pictures</li> <li>&gt; Iso Videos</li> <li>&gt; Local Disk (C:)</li> <li>&gt; Data (D:)</li> </ul>				
File name: file_name	me			
Save as type: Image I	File (*.bmp)			
▲ Hide Folders			Save	Cancel
Related Structures Recognition Status				
	Generate Clos			

After choosing the folder and file name, click the **Save** button.

If the record selected is found in the table that the template used, you will view a message that shows that the generation was successful as shown below.

🜔 Doc	ument Generation Complete	×
0	Document generation has successfully	completed.
	ОК	
	+ • • • • •	

Click on the **OK** button.

The document has now been successfully generated. You can browse to the saved location to see the document.

### **B. Saving in the Output Folder**

If you want to use the output folder, check on the "**Write to output folder**" checkbox as shown in the image below.

The box **Output Document Naming** gets active so that you can also choose and sort the values to be used in the document file name.

Copyright © 2017 by UN-Habitat. All Rights Reserved

Check on the checkbox in front of the column that you want the file name to draw values from.

utput Document Naming:		
elect the fields whose values will be use First Name	ed to name the output docume	ent files.
X Middle Name		
X Last Name		-
X National ID		_
Gender		
Date Of Birth		
	Generate	Close

If necessary, sort the order of columns by selecting, dragging and dropping them to the position you want them to be.

For instance, the image below shows that National ID is about to be placed before **Last Name**.

😲 Document Generator				?	×
Click on the plus button below to a Person Structure	add a recor	d from the da	tabase.		
	ast Name	National ID	Gender	Date Of Bir	th 🔥
•					• •
Use matching records in data Template:	source def	ined in docum	ent templ	ate	
Select document temp	olate				
• Export as Image		bmp			•
Export as PDF		ß			
Write to output folder -Output Document Naming:					
Select the fields whose values v First Name Middle Name Last Name National ID Gender Date Of Birth	vill be used	to name the	output doo	cument files.	4
			G <mark>enera</mark> te	Cle	ose

Click on the **Generate** button.

If the record selected is found in the table that the template used, you will see a success message that shows that the generation was successful.

😲 Doc	ument Generation Complete	×
1	Document generation has successfu	illy completed.
	ОК	

Click on the **OK button**.

The document has been successfully generated. You can browse the output path to see the generated document.

Copyright © 2017 by UN-Habitat. All Rights Reserved

# **Managing Data Import and Export**

## **Formatting Spreadsheet Data**

We can import data contained in a CSV (Comma Separated Value) file format created in Microsoft Excel and similar products. The following sub-topics enable you to format your data so as to easily import it into STDM database without an error.

## Adding a Date into a Cell

Importing a CSV file with a date data could fail with an incompatible format in the CSV file and the database. Thus, to properly import data, the date format in the CSV file should be the same as the STDM database.

The STDM database uses the same format as your computer date format.

To know your computer date format, follow the steps below.

1. Look at the Taskbar date format.

2. Hover on the date to know which one is the date, month and year (see the image below).



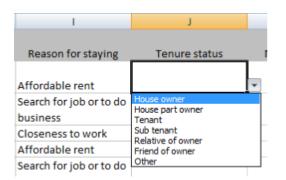
The image above shows the date format is **m/d/yyyy**. In other words, month number, date number, and the year separated by forward slash. The format could differ from computer to computer based on your system language. The above date format is based on US English language.

Accordingly, the date to be entered in the spreadsheet/CSV file should be in the same format.

For instance, if the original data has a format of 23/05/2013, it should be formatted to 5/23/2013 in the CSV file so that STDM can accept it.

**Note:** If you are importing it into a Server, contact the system administrator to identify the correct date format.

### **Creating Lookups in Microsoft Excel**



Drop-down list makes data entry easier in Excel and restricts data recording to that in the list.

This eliminates typing errors as well as saving on time. A drop-down list can be in column or row format.

Steps to follow when creating a list in Excel column:

- 1 Define the entries for the list in the order you want it to appear e.g. [Male, Female]
- 2 Type the list in the given cells without having a blank cell in-between.

Person Gender
Male
Female

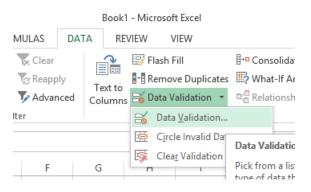
The list may be in the same or different worksheets.

• For a list in a different worksheet, type the **list** on that worksheet and define a **name** for it.



### Adding the List to a Cell

- On the working sheet, select the cell you want.
- On the **Data** menu, click **Data Validation**.



• Click the first tab **Settings** tab in the new dialog window.

Data Validation
Settings Input Message Error Alert
Validation criteria
Allow:
Data:
Searce:
=Gender E
Apply these changes to all other cells with the same settings
Glear All OK Cancel

In the Allow drop-down box select List.

Specify the source of the list;

- If the list is in the current worksheet, enter a reference (range) to your list in the Source box
- If the list is in another worksheet, enter the name that you defined for the list in the **Source** box.

In both cases, make sure that the reference or name is preceded by an equal sign (=).

To specify whether the cell can be left blank, select or clear the **Ignore blank** check box

### **Removing Drop-down List**

- Select the cell within the list
- Click the **Data** menu and then click **Data Validation**.

• In the **Data validation** dialog box that pops up and click the **Setting** tab and then click **Clear All** button at the bottom of the dialog.

For more information, go to:

• <u>http://www.spreadsheets.about.com/od/excelformatting/How\_to\_Use\_Excel\_Form</u> <u>atting\_Features\_Format\_Excel\_Spreadsheets.htm</u>

### **Capitalizing Cell Text**

The example uses random cells numbers.

To extract and capitalize the first name from the name collection, use the following function: =IFERROR (PROPER (LEFT (A2, (FIND (" ", TRIM (A2))-1))),"") To extract and capitalize the last name from the name collection, use the following function: =IFERROR (PROPER (RIGHT (A2, (LEN (TRIM (A2))-FIND (" ", TRIM (A2))))),"") To extract and capitalize sex information if defined as MALE, FEMALE, M or F in the Sex collection, uses the following function: =IF(D2="MALE",PROPER(D2),IF(D2="M","Male",IF(D2="F","Female",IF(D2="FEMALE",PROPE R(D2))))

To check if an integer cell is defined or set as a blank text if specified as zero:

### =IF (F2>0, F2,"")

To set an option cell as a blank text it's specified as NA:

```
=IF (W2="NA","", PROPER (W2))
```

For more help, visit

https://support.office.com/en-us/excel

## **Importing Attribute Data**

Attribute data here refers to the non-spatial data imported into the STDM database. Attribute data for instance may refer to Party Records. The process of data import is similar for all modules.

Before importing, make sure that you are logged in, QGIS is running and STDM tool bar is active.

**1.** Click on the **Import Data button** on the STDM tool bar as shown below.

🐷 🛃 🔄 🔛 🕄 🕢 🗗 🔄 🖬 😫 🖬 💽 🗿 🖯	Ð
-----------------------------	---

🥂 Import to STDM	? <b>×</b>
Source Data Specify the location of the source	e file and representative data type.
Source:	Browse
Destination Repository Type: Textual Data	2 O Spatial Data
I	
	< Back Next > Cancel

2. Browse to the location of file (excel file) in the directory.

🧭 Import to STDM
Source Data Specify the location of the source file and representative data type.
Source:
Dataset E:/Sample data/Households_data records.csv Browse
Destination Repository Type:
Textual Data     Spatial Data
1
< Back Next > Cancel

3.Click **Next** and then select the destination table.

🥂 Import to STDM	? 💌
Copy Table Destination table and import options.	
Select Destination Table:	Options:
<ul> <li>admin_spatial_unit_set</li> <li>check_document_type</li> <li>check_gender</li> <li>check_montly_income</li> <li>check_previous_residence</li> <li>check_rent</li> <li>check_settlement_reason</li> <li>check_type</li> <li>content_base</li> <li>content_roles</li> <li>enumerator</li> <li>household</li> <li>party</li> <li>niority</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Append Data</li> <li>Overwrite Existing</li> <li>Geometry Column:  <ul> <li>2</li> </ul> </li> <li>2</li> <li>Append Data</li> </ul>

5. Perform source column to destination column matching for the required field.

🕺 Import to STDM		? ×
Assign Columns Match source and destination table columns	5.	
Source Table:	Destination Table:	
Image: Second secon	id location total_members name	•
	< Back Finish	Cancel

•

These are navigation arrows that allows you to match the columns in the two panels

6. Click **Finish** to import the data.

🦸 Import to S	TDM	8	X
Assign Colum Match s	nns ource and destination table columns.		
Source Tab	Destination Table: Iccation Iccation I		
	< Back Finish	Can	cel

Copyright © 2017 by UN-Habitat. All Rights Reserved

# **Importing Spatial Data**

Spatial Units can be imported into the STDM database from a shapefile, autoCAD or comma separated values.

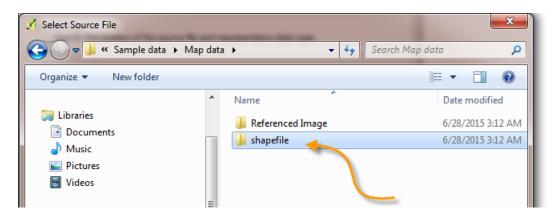
1. To import, click on the **Import Data** button (<sup>22</sup>) located in STDM toolbar. A dialog box appears allowing you to browse to the source folder of the data to be imported.

2. Check the Spatial data circle to enable/activate it.

3. Browse to the folder where the shape files (spatial data) is stored.

M Import to STDM	? ×
Source Data Specify the location of the source file and representative data type.	
Source: Dataset Destination Repository Type: Textual Data Spatial Data	Browse
< Back Next >	Cancel

**4.** Go to the **Sample data** folder⇒**Map Data**⇒and select **shapefiles** and open the shape files



Copyright © 2017 by UN-Habitat. All Rights Reserved

If nothing is displaying on the opened folder, make sure that the file format is in **ESRI Shapefile (\*.shp)** as shown below.

<i>K</i>	Select Source Fi	le		×
🔄 🍥 👻 🕇 퉬 🕨 sample o	data → Digitized vector	~ ¢	Search Digitized vector	Q,
Organise 🔻 New folder				
☆ Favourites ■ Desktop	Name sample points.shp		Date modified 08/07/2015 18:03	Type SHP File
Downloads	samples structures.shp		08/07/2015 18:04	SHP File
🖳 Recent places				
<ul> <li>Libraries</li> <li>Documents</li> <li>Music</li> <li>Pictures</li> </ul>				
🛃 Videos				
Local Disk (C:)	✓ <			>
File name:		v	ESRI Shapefile (*.shp) Comma Separated Value ESRI Shapefile (*.shp) AutoCAD DXF (*.dxf)	✓ (*.csv) 

- 5. Select the file and Click **Open.**
- 6. Click **Next** to continue.

ø	Import to STDM ?	×
	Source Data Specify the location of the source file and representative data type.	
	Source: Dataset Users/Njogus/Desktop/sample data/Digitized vector/samples structures.shp Browse	
	Destination Repository Type:	
	<ul> <li>Textual Data</li> <li>Spatial Data</li> </ul>	
	< Back Next > Car	ncel

A dialog box appears allowing you to specify the **destination table** and the **Geometry** of the data being imported.

**7**. Select the destination table of the data by checking/enabling the **Spatial\_unit**.

**8.** In the Geometry Column, a drop down list allows you to choose the data type of your data. Select **Polygon** 

9. Click Next to continue

Select Destination Table:	Options:
	Append Data
	Overwrite Existing
	Geometry Column: geom_line v geom_line geom_point

A dialog box appears allowing you to match source and destination table column. Use the "UP" and "DOWN" buttons to match the columns.

10. Click on the **Finish** button.

🕺 Import to STDM		? ×
Assign Columns Match source and destination table column	5.	
Source Table:	Destination Table: id name type sp_unit_use spatial_unit_id	
	< Back Finish	Cancel

The spatial units have now been imported into the STDM database.

Copyright © 2017 by UN-Habitat. All Rights Reserved

A notification will pop up showing you that the data has been imported successfully.

## **Importing Supporting Documents**

While importing spatial and attribute data, we can also import supporting documents added for each record. To import the supporting documents, on the csv file, you need to add the path or the file name of the files to be imported for each records in the csv file, as shown in the image below.

F	G	Н	1	J	К
marital_st	household	residence_	telephone_numbe	address	photo
1	1	0	711516003		1.png
1	1	0	711016005		2.png
1	1	0	721516607		3.png
2	0	0	710516044		4.png
3	0	0	714416007		6.png

Once you have saved your csv file. Follow the steps of importing attribute data as shown in <u>Importing</u> <u>Attribute Data topic</u> up to step 5. Then, follow the steps below.

1. Select on **Show virtual tables** checkbox as shown below.

Source 1	Table:	Destination Table:	
All None	<ul> <li>first_name</li> <li>middle_name</li> <li>last_name</li> <li>national_id</li> <li>gender</li> <li>marital_status</li> <li>household_relatio</li> <li>telephone_numbe</li> <li>photo</li> <li>address</li> <li>residence_area</li> </ul>	first_name middle_name last_name national_id gender marital_status household_relation telephone_number address residence_area date_of_birth	•
	۹	Show virtual columns Value translators:	

2. When **Show virtual columns** is checked, the selected entity's supporting document types loads as shown below.

Source 1	Table:	Destination Table:	
<ul><li>♦</li><li>All</li><li>None</li></ul>	<ul> <li>First_name</li> <li>middle_name</li> <li>last_name</li> <li>gender</li> <li>marital_status</li> <li>household_relatio</li> <li>telephone_numbe</li> <li>photo</li> <li>address</li> <li>residence_area</li> </ul>	first_name middle_name last_name national_id gender marital_status household_relation telephone_number address residence_area date_of_birth Photo Identification Card	•
	A	X Show virtual columns Value translators:	

3. Align the supporting document type in which you want to insert a supporting document. In our case it is **Photo document type**. Move **Photo** up to be in-line with photo of the source table (see the image below). In addition, align other columns of the source and destination table.

Source 1	Table:	Destination Table:	
All None	<ul> <li>first_name</li> <li>middle_name</li> <li>last_name</li> <li>national_id</li> <li>gender</li> <li>marital_status</li> <li>household_relatio</li> <li>telephone_numbe</li> <li>photo</li> <li>address</li> <li>residence_area</li> </ul>	first_name middle_name last_name national_id gender marital_status household_relation telephone_number Photo address residence_area date_of_birth Identification Card	•
	(	X Show virtual columns Value translators:	

4. Click on the **Add** (<sup>1</sup>) button located below **Show virtual columns** checkbox to see the **Supporting documents** menu as shown below.

Image: State of the s	first_name middle_name last_name national_id gender marital_status household_relation telephone_number Photo address residence_area date_of_birth Identification Card
	X Show virtual columns Value translators:

5. Choose the **Supporting documents** menu to open a popup for choosing the file path of the supporting documents to be imported.

Q Supporting Documents Translator Dia	alog	?	×
Supporting documents folder			
	ОК	Car	ncel

6. Click on **the folder** icon next to the white box to browse for the folder and when you reach where you would like to import the data, click on the **Select** button. Once selected, you will see the path added as shown below.

upporting documents folder	C:/Users/Admin/Pictures		
	ОК	Cano	el

Click on the **OK** button to save the path.

7. Click on the **Finish** button. A success message is shown if you have specified the folder of the documents and if you have properly aligned the other columns.

## **Importing Data to Related Table Columns**

You can import data to a related entity column in the destination table using the **Related Table Translation** module.

In order to implement this translator, the source table must contain at least one column that refers to a unique value in a related table such as a household code that a person belongs to. During the translation process, the system will attempt to lookup this value and extract a corresponding value ideally, the value of the foreign key column and use this value in the primary reference table.

**Example:** Say we have a person CSV file that we would like to import to the person table in the STDM database; the source data contains a household code column that refers to the household in which the person belongs to. Through the related table translator, we are able to link each person's row to the corresponding household that he/she belongs to using the household code.

#### Illustration:

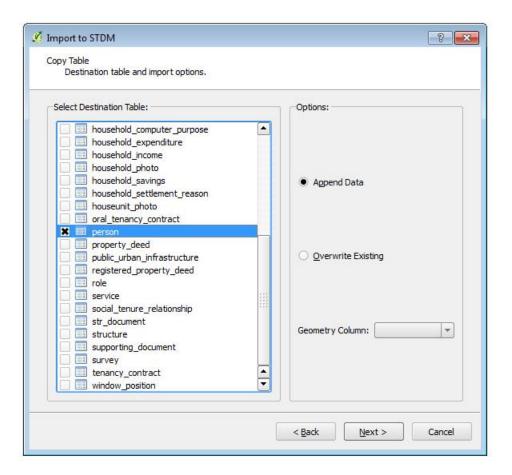
Surname	Other Names	Household Code
Gitau	John	TY670P
Gachoka	Agnes	NJ89A
Adhiambo	Laureen	TY670P
Kimani	Anthony	NJ89A
Table 1: Person data in CSV form	nat	

#### To import this data:

1. Click on the import icon to load the import data window as shown below.

ource Data Specify the location of the source	te file and representative data type.	
Source:		
Dataset D:/Temp/Data/Sample Da	ata.csv	Browse
Destination Repository Type:		
Textual Data	O Spatial Data	

- 2. Specify the data source and select the table type i.e. spatial or textual.
- 3. Click **Next** to select the destination table. In this case, our destination table is **person**.



4. Click **Next** to load the column matching page. Based on the data provided, we shall match the columns as follows:

#### **Source Table Columns Destination Table Column**

Surname	last_name
Other Names	first_name
Household Code	Household_id

All None	<ul> <li>Surname</li> <li>Other Names</li> <li>Household Code</li> <li>ID Number</li> <li>Age</li> <li>Gender</li> <li>Marital Status</li> <li>Occupation</li> </ul>	last_name         first_name         household_id         company_activity         currently_studying         date_of_birth         education_level         employment_status         ethnicity         gender         householdhead_relation         id         job_type         labour_activity         marital_status         occupation         origin_id         study_plans
-------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

5. We now need to specify how the system should handle and use value from the *Household Code* column to link it to the *household* table through the **household\_id** column in the **person** table. To do this, click on the **household\_id** column to select it then click on the **plus sign** at the bottom next to the **Value translators** label. Select **Related Table...** option to load the dialog for specifying how the data will be linked.

6. In the **Related Table Translator Configuration** dialog, the destination table settings are fixed as they are based on the import configuration that we specified prior to loading the translator dialog. Our focus will be on the **Referenced Table Settings** – in this case, we want to instruct the system that the *household\_id* column in the *person* table should be linked to *id* column in the *household* table. However, we need to further instruct the system that it needs to link this data by using the value from the *Household Code* column in the CSV file and lookup it up in the *code* column in the *household* table. Hence, the dialog settings will be as follows:

assign colon	🥂 Related Table Translator Configuration				
Match s	Destination Table	e Settings:			
-Source Tab	Table name	person			
•	Column name	household_id			
•	Referenced Table	e Settings:			
All	Table name	household	ehold 💌		
None	Output column	id		-	
	So	urce Table	Referer	iced Table	
	1 Household	Iode	code		
	2				
					5
			OK	Cancel	

7. Click **OK** to save these settings.

8. Click on Finish to start the import process. STDM will now lookup the household id using the household code and insert it into the **household\_id** column in the **person** table.

## **Importing into Lookup Columns**

You can import data to a lookup column in the destination table using the **Lookup Table Translation** module.

In order to implement this translator, the source table must contain at least one column that refers to a unique value in a related table such as a gender that a person belongs to. During the translation process, the system will attempt to lookup this value and extract a corresponding value ideally, the value of the lookup column and use this value in the primary reference table, which is the lookup table.

**Example:** Say we have a person CSV file that we would like to import to the person table in the STDM database; the source data such as a spreadsheet that contains a gender column that has the gender of each record as **Male** and **Female**. However, if the destination table column uses a gender lookup table, the values in this lookup column is stored as integer, representing the id of the lookup value - Male or Female. Through, the **Lookup Table Translator**, we are able convert each value in the csv

file that is a text with a value of Male or Female to an integer corresponding to the id of the lookup values - Male and Female.

The steps below clarifies how you can convert data stored as a text in a source table (csv, shp, etc) to an integer that corresponds to the id of the lookup value being converted from the source table.

1. Prepare the source table such as a csv with a lookup value written into it. In this case, a gender information is added with values Male and Female as shown in the image below.

E1:	1	• • <u>·</u> ·		Jx
4	А	В	С	[
1	first name	last name	gender	
2	Peter	Alex	Male	
3	Mary	Rogers	Female	
4	David	Mark	Male	
5	Elen	Brooks	Female	
6				

2. You need to create a lookup table and add the values of Male and Female in the Configuration Wizard as discussed in <u>Creating Lookups</u> topic. Make sure the values in the lookup table and in your source table (eg. csv file) have the same case and spelling. Otherwise, it will not import correctly.

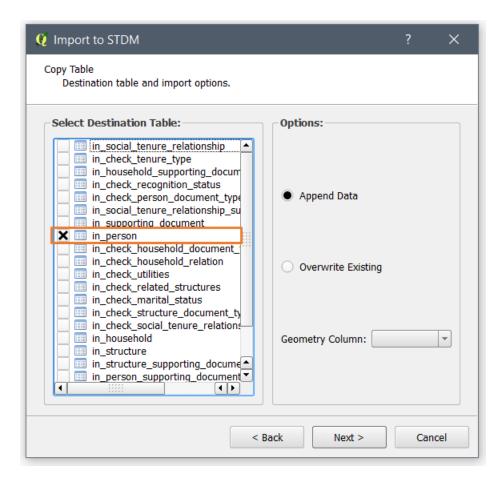
3. Start the Import Data module located in the STDM toolbar as highlighted in the image below.



4. Choose the T**extual data** radio button and choose the **csv** file by clicking on the **Browse** button as shown in the image below. You can also use a spatial data if needed.

🤨 Import to STDM	?	×
Source Data Specify the location of the source file and representative data type.		
Source: Dataset TN/Training/Excersise files/importing/person_forign_key.csv	Browse	
Destination Repository Type:		
Textual Data     Spatial Data		
< Back Next >	Cano	cel

5. Choose the table to which the data is going to be imported into and click on the **Next** button. In this case, it is the person table that is selected as highlighted in the image below.



6. Align the source and destination columns as shown in the image below so that they are in line and we can import data into the correct column. To align them you can use the up and down arrows or using a drag and drop. Then check all the columns you want to import data from. Make sure you have also selected the lookup column as shown in the image below.

🤨 Import to STDM	?	×
Assign Columns Match source and destination table co	olumns.	
Source Table:	Destination Table:         first_name         last_name         gender         national_id         middle_name         date_of_birth         marital_status         household_relation         telephone_number         address         residence_area         household         Show virtual columns         Value translators:	•
	< Back Finish Ca	ncel

7. Click on the **Value Translators Plus** button and click on **Lookup values** menu item as shown in the image below.

🤨 Import to STDM	? ×
Assign Columns Match source and destination table	columns.
Source Table:	Destination Table:
Image: state	first_name         last_name         gender         middle_name         national_id         date_of_birth         marital_status         household_relation         telephone_number         address         residence_area         Show virtual columns         Value translators:         Image: Column translated tran
	< Back Lookup values

8. The **Lookup Translator** popup window loads. Choose the lookup table in which the lookup values are translated. In this case we have used the gender lookup so we have to use the gender lookup named **check\_gender** as shown in the image below.

J	Q Lookup Transla		name	?	×
	Lookup table	in_check_gender			•
1	Default lookup value				-
			ОК	Cance	

9. The **Default lookup value** drop down enables you to choose a lookup value to that will be used in case the source table has no value or invalid values. This might be relevant in some cases. Click on the **Ok** button.

10. You can now access the main **Import** wizard. Here you can edit the existing value translator using the Edit button or remove it completely. When done, click on the **Finish** button to finish the importing. If successful, you will see a success message as shown in the image below.

Copyright © 2017 by UN-Habitat. All Rights Reserved

Import to STDM Assign Columns Match source and	destination table o	olumns.	?	×
	s-bin	Destination Table:         first_name         last_name         gender         x         ove been imported successfully!         OK         OK         Show virtual columns         Value translators:         Image: Column S and Columns		
		< Back Finish	С	ancel

# **Export Data from the STDM**

**1.** Select Export Data command item from the menu.



**2**. An export STDM Data pops up allowing you to choose the **destination file** and **format**.

<i>1</i>	Export STDM Data	? ×
Destination Options Select destination	file name and format.	=
Destination Format: - ESRI Shapefile CSV MapInfo File GPX DXF Destination File:		2
ø	Select Output File	3
🔄 🏵 🔹 🕇 🌗	sample → Digitized vector ∨	C Search Digitized vector
Organise 👻 New f	older	: == : ==
Favourites Desktop Downloads Dropbox	<ul> <li>Name</li> <li>sample points.shp</li> <li>samples structures.shp</li> </ul>	Date modified 08/07/2015 18:03 08/07/2015 18:04

- **3.** Select the destination format from the list.
- 4.Browse to save location of the file (Destination File)
- **4.** Enter a name for the file to be created.
- 5. Click Save on the file save dialog
- 6. Click Next to proceed.

🐔 Export S	STDM Data ? ×
Export Table Select the table or view from the STDM d	atabase whose contents are to be exported.
Source Table:	Textual Columns:         address         contact_telephone         date_of_birth         family_name         gender         id         identification         marital_status         other_names
witness	< Back Next > Cancel

**7.** Select the table data to be exported from the left **Source table**.

**8**.Check by marking the **textual columns** you wish to be exported on the right. Click the **Next** button to proceed.

**9.** Likewise, when exporting spatial data, select it in the data **source table** and select the required fields (**Textual columns** in the right side) that will appear on the final generated file as shown in the image below.

If the data source table has geometry columns, the geometry column to be exported need to be selected.

<b>10</b> E	xport STDM Data	? ×
Export Table Select the table or view from the	STDM database whose contents are to be	exported.
Source Table:	Textual Columns:	
<ul> <li>check_previous_residence</li> <li>check_rent</li> <li>check_settlement_reason</li> <li>check_social_tenure_type</li> <li>check_type</li> <li>content_base</li> <li>content_roles</li> <li>enumerator</li> <li>household</li> <li>party</li> <li>priority</li> <li>respondent</li> <li>role</li> <li>social_tenure_relationship</li> <li>spatial_unit</li> </ul>	Spatial Columns:	
iii survey iii witness	geom_polygon	-
	< Back Next >	Cancel

**10.** Click the **Next** button to proceed to the next page.

If specific queries need to be implemented on the resultant data, they can be specified using the **Query Builder** in the next page as shown below.

If no queries are required, clear the **Query Builder** check box.

Query Builde	r:			
Columns:			Unique Values:	
contact_tele family_name gender household_i id identification other_name	e d		Ge	t Unique Values
	<>>	LIKE		
>	>=	AND		
<	<=	OR	Clear	Verify

### 11. Click Finish.

A message box will prompt the response when the action is completed. Dismiss the dialog.

Browse to the location of the file to see the results. If you are not satisfied with the result, the process can be repeated with new options.

Query Buil	Jer;		
Columns:		Unique Values:	
address age	qgis-bin		23
id			
-Operators:		ок	
	) <> [LIKE	ок	
-Operators:			

12. Click on the **OK** button to finish the process.

# Settings

# **Managing User and Roles**

## **User Management**

To manage user roles and administrative settings, follow the steps below.

- **1.** Click on the **admin settings** button shown in a red box.
- 2. From the drop down contents, click on the item named **manage user roles**.

The dialog below appears. Here, you can manage users by creating, editing and deleting them.

🌠 Manage System Users and Roles	? 💌
🚨 Users 🛛 😤 Roles 🗮 Mappings	
solomon	New
	Edit
	Delete
	Close

A **user** is person authorized to manage and manipulate content set up on the configuration wizard.

The data management dialog will appear with the default user created. However, more users can set up new accounts for content management.

## Create a User

To create a new user, follow the steps below.

**1**. Click on the **New...** button to input the required information.

🌠 Manage System Us	ers and Roles	8 23
🚨 Users 🛛 🥵 Ro	oles 🗳 Mappings	
solomon		New
🦸 New User Account	? 💌	Edit
New User Information	n:	Delete
UserName	Stephen	
Password	•••••	
Confirm Password	•••••	
Account Expires On	6/5/2014	
X No Expiry Date		
	Create User Cancel	Close

On the new user dialog, input the user name and create a password to login with as shown in the image above.

The new user created can be given a timeline after which the user account created will expire.

By clearing the **No Expiry Date check box**, the expiry date set up will be deactivated.

🌠 New User Account						?	×	
-New User Information	n:							
UserName	Step	hen						
Password	•••	••••						
Confirm Password	•••	••••						
Account Expires On	6/5/	2014					•	
No Expiry Date	Θ		Jur	ne 2	014		٢	١
0	Sun	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri	Sat	1
	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	I
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	I
	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	
	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	Ī
	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	I
	29	30	1	2	3	4	5	J

2. Click on the **date** button and set up an expiry date for which the new user account will be active.

**3.** Once done, click on the **Create user** button on the dialog to create the new user.

## Edit a User

The user management dialog also has a user editing option.

Copyright © 2017 by UN-Habitat. All Rights Reserved

🔏 Manage System Users and Roles	8 8
🚄 Users 🏼 😤 Roles 🗮 Mappings	
solomon	New
Vpdate User Account	Edit
User Account Information	Delete
UserName patrick	
Password	
Confirm Password	
Account Expires On 6/5/2014	
X No Expiry Date	
Update User Cancel	Close

**1.** To edit an already created account, select the user to be edited then click on the **Edit** button.

On the user update dialog, user can make any changes required.

**2.** Once done, click on the **update** user button to effect the changes.

If user clicks on the edit button before selecting an account, a warning dialog appears.

🔓 Users	Appings	
solomon		New
joseph		
patrick		Edit
Stephen	🖌 Select User 🔤	Delete
	ОК	
		Close

**3.** Click on the **OK** button and select a user account to edit.

## Delete a User

The user management dialog also has the option to delete an account

🔏 Manage System Users and Roles	? 🛛
🔓 Users 🖉 Roles 💐 Mappings	
solomon joseph	New
patrick	Edit
Stephen	Delete
🌠 Delete User 🛛 🕰	
Are you sure you want to delete 'Stephen'? Once deleted, this user account cannot be recovered. Yes No	
	Close

- **1.** Select which user account to be deleted.
- 2. Click the Delete button.

A delete user warning appears. The user can confirm the delete action by clicking on the **Yes** button to proceed. This will erase the account from the user list and any roles associated with the account .

# **Role Management**

A role is an entity that can own database objects and have database privileges. A role can be considered a "user", a "group", or both, depending on how it is used.

To manage roles on the management dialog, click on the **roles** button circled in red below.

🧭 Manage System Users and Roles	? 💌
🔓 Users 🥵 Roles 💐 Mappings	
editor	New
	Delete
	Sync
Description:	
	Close

Default roles created will launch on the dialog. User has an option to create new roles for the users.

## **Create a Role**

To set up a new role, follow the steps below.

**1**. Click on the '**new**' button on the dialog.

editor			New
	🌠 New Role		3 elete
	Role Informa	tion:	Sync
	Name	Administrator	
	Description	Overall management	
	l	Create Role Cancel	
Descript			

**2.** On the new role dialog, input the name of the role and its description.

3. Next, click on **Create Role** for the new role to be created.

## **Delete Role**

The role management dialog also has a delete option to delete a created role.

- **1.** First **selects** a role to delete.
- 2. Next, click on the **Delete** button to erase the role.

Users 🕺 Roles 🗨 Mappings	New
administrator	Delete
💋 Delete Role	Sync Sync
Once deleted, this role cannot be rec	overed.
Yes No	overed.
	overed.

A warning dialog appears and on this action and the user is required to confirm the delete action.

**3.** Click on the **Yes** button if you wish to proceed with the action.

# **User Mappings**

It is at this point that the user authorizes who has access to the content.

Various roles created are assigned to various users for management and execution.

🔓 Users 🛛 🍰 Roles	C Mappings	
	the left-hand side below then t-hand side to add/remove the solomon joseph to patrick stephen	m in this role.
		Close

**1.** Click on the **mappings button** at the top of the management dialog for grouping.

The roles will appear on the left side of the dialog and the users will appear on the right.

**2.** Select a role to assign users by clicking on it. Next **check** or **uncheck** the box against a user to assign that role to that user.

Do this for all the roles so that no roles are left unassigned.

# **Content Authorization**

This is the point where various roles are assigned their content. Each role is given certain content to be executed by the user assigned to that role

**1.** To achieve content authorization, click on the **admin settings** button on the STDM toolbar.

2. Select content authorization as shown below.



The dialog below will appear and it is on this wizard that the user assigns the content to roles.

**3.** To do this, user clicks on a content item on the left side of the dialog and assigns it to a role on the right side of the dialog by **checking or unchecking** the box against the role depending on whether the user is approving or disproving the assignment.

Copyright © 2017 by UN-Habitat. All Rights Reserved

🌠 Content Authorization	-?
Click on a content item in the table on the left- the authorised roles on the table in the right-h Content Authorization	hand side and check/uncheck to approve/disapprove and side below.
Manage Users-Roles	🗶 🏂 administrator
Manage Administrative Units	GISRole
Toggle Spatial Unit Editing	
Create Spatial Unit	
Design Forms	
Create Survey	
Select Survey	
Update Survey	
Delete Survey	
Document Designer	
Document Generator	
·	
	Close

A role can be assigned multiple content depending on the nature of the content and the role description. Once all content is assigned its role, click on the **Close** button.

# **Options**

The Options Module enables you to change the current/active profile, which enables you to change profiles without logging out.

In addition, you can modify the database connection setting of STDM that enable you to switch to a different database.

You can also modify directories used by STDM.

To open options Module, look for Options under Admin Settings menu located in STDM Toolbar or STDM menu.

Click on **Options** menu as shown below.



The Options module loads as shown below.

et current profile			Rural_Agriculture	
Database Prop	oerties			
Note: Changes	to the database conn	ection properti	es will only take effect	upon the next login
		localhost		
Host		localnost		_]
Port		5432		Clear
Database		stdm		Test connection
Extract from	existing connection			•
upporting docum	ents folder		C:\Users\Wondim\.	stdm\Data
Document Com				
Template folder	C:\Users\Wondim\.	stdm\Reports\T	ēmplates	
Output folder	C:\Users\Wondim\.	stdm\Reports\o	outputs	
		Upgrade	ì	

The sub-topics discuss each features of the Options module.

# **Changing the Current Profile**

As you can easily create profiles in the Configuration Wizard, switching between profiles is achieved in just two clicks. These profiles are created and customized by the Configuration Wizard. Once you create a new profile, you can then switch to it.

To change the current profile, follow the steps below.

1. Open the Options module as explained in <u>Options topic</u>.

2. At the top of the Options module, click on the drop down menu labelled **Set current profile**. It holds list of profiles in your Configuration.

😢 Options		?	×
Set current profile	Informal_Settlement		•
	-		

3. At the bottom of the module, click on the **Apply** button (

This will lead to a success message as shown below.

Options			×
Settings successfully	saved.		×
Set current profile	Informal_Settlement		-

You can also see the changed profile in QGIS status bar as shown below.

ſ	Import Feature:	
	From GPX File	
Current ST	DM Profile: Informal Settlement	Coordinate 334776,18.525602

Changing the current profile leads to the following.

- Removal of the STDM layers
- Change of Entity Menu items by the newly loaded profile entities.
- Change of the Current STDM Profile text in QGIS status bar.
- Change of tables participating in social tenure relationship.
- Change of list of tables that are accessed throughout STDM.
- All STDM modules reload to capture the newly loaded profile and database tables.

# **Modifying Database Connection Settings**

The **Options** module enables you to modify your current STDM database connection settings. This setting change requires logging out of STDM for the change to be applied.

You can change the database server host, port and database connected.

Copyright © 2017 by UN-Habitat. All Rights Reserved

To change the database connection, follow the steps below.

1. You can type the values in the **Database Properties** box as shown below.

<b>lote:</b> Changes to the database conr	rection properties will only t	ake enect upon the next login
Host	localhost	
Port	5432	Clear
Database	stdm	Test connection

a. **Host refers to** the location of a computer that has hosted the database server (PostgreSQL). If the database server is installed in your own computer, you have to enter **localhost** as shown above. However, when PostereSQL that holds the database is installed in an office network, the IP address is different from localhost. It could be a number like 192.168.0.23 or any other number with such a format as specified by the system administrator. This is relevant when STDM is installed for governmental or ganizations with a centralized database server.

b. **Port** refers to an endpoint of communication for the database server (postgreSQL). To access the database from STDM, we need to know its port. The most common port values for PostgreSQL are **5432, 5433, or any other port as specified during installation.** 

c. **Database** refers to a data storage location in which the entire data of STDM is stored. By default, during installation, it is set as **stdm**. You can enter any other database that you want to connect to after installation using PostgreSQL administration software called pgAdmin III. If you want to use your own database, make sure the PostGIS extension is installed and added to the database that STDM uses. Otherwise, STDM cannot run.

2. If you have already saved a database connection in QGIS's DB Manager, you can extract it by checking on **Extract from existing connection** option.

The drop down next to the checkbox gets enabled and if you have a saved connection. Click on the drop down menu and select one item (see the image below).

Extract from existing connection	•	

3. You can also test the connection setting that you have added by clicking on the **Test connection...** button as highlighted below.

Copyright © 2017 by UN-Habitat. All Rights Reserved

lote: Changes to the database conn	ection properties will only t	take effect upor	the next login
lost	localhost		
Port	5432		Clear
Database	stdm		Test connection

When you click on Test connection... button, a popup appears where you have to enter your database username and password (see the image below).

N DIDMI	Database Conne	. ^
UserName	postgres	
Password	•••••	
	Test	Cancel

Next, click on the **Test** button to check if the database properties you have filled are valid. If the connection is successful, a success message is shown (see the image below).

🧕 Databa	se Connection	×
<b>()</b>	onnection to 'stdm2' database	was successful.
	ОК	

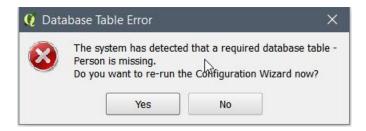
A successful connection means that you can change your database connection with no errors.

Once you have modified the connection setting, click on the **Apply** button (

Apply

Logout of STDM for the changes in the database connection to be applied.

If you are connecting to a new database or a database that does not have the latest configuration, run the **Configuration Wizard** to create STDM database. Failure to do this will mean no access to most modules of STDM. In this case, when you try to access STDM modules you will see an error message similar to the one shown in the image below.



# **Modifying STDM Folders**

The **Options** module enables you to modify folders used by STDM.

You can change the supporting document folder, template folder and the output folder.

To modify the paths, you just have to click on the folder icon on each path as shown below and select a folder.

Document Com	poser		
Template folder	C:/Users/V	Vondim/.stdm/Reports/Templates	
Output folder	C:/Users/V	Vondim/.stdm/Reports/outputs	ß

Once you have modified the folders, click on the Apply button (

This will result in the reloading of all STDM modules to pick the changes in STDM folders.

Copyright © 2017 by UN-Habitat. All Rights Reserved

# **Upgrading Old Configuration**

If you miss the upgrading of STDM configuration from STDM 1.0 or 1.1 to STDM 1.4, you can still make the upgrade from the Options Module. The migration process is discussed in greater detail in <u>Migration from Previous Version</u> topic.

Apply

**\_**).

1. In the **Options** module, go to the bottom of the module and locate **Upgrade STDM Configuration to 1.4** with the **Upgrade** button as highlighted below.

et current profile			Rural_Agriculture	•
Database Prop	oerties			
Note: Changes	to the database conn	ection propertie	es will only <mark>ta</mark> ke effect	upon the next login
Host		localhost		7
Port		5432		Clear
Database		stdm		Test connection
Extract from	existing connection			•
upporting docum	ents folder		C:\Users\Wondim\.	stdm\Data
Document Com	iposer			
Template folder	C:\Users\Wondim\.	stdm\Reports\T	emplates	
Output folder	C:\Users\Wondim\.	stdm\Reports\o	utputs	
	onfiguration to 1.4	Upgrade	1	

### 2. Click on the **Upgrade** button.

In case you have uninstalled QGIS with its registry using third party uninstallers, STDM might lose all the directory settings.

In such a case, you will see a dialog requiring you to select the supporting document, template and output folders. Click on the **folder browse** button (E) to select all the required folders (see the image below).

🤨 Directory Settings		?	×	
We couldn't find the required STDM folder setting in the system. Please, select the template and supporting document folders below. The supporting documents folder is the folder that contains the 2020 folder. The template folder is the folder that contains your document templates. The output folder is the folder where you save the generated documents.				
Supporting documents folder				
Template folder				
Output folder				
		Ар	ply	

**Note:** Closing the **Directory Settings** dialog without selecting and applying the settings will lead to the cancellation of the migration process. This will lead to the temporary loss of access to the existing profile, data, and templates.

If you did not see the dialog, it means your directory setting is not removed from your system.

This leads to the starting of the upgrade process. You will see a progress dialog as shown below.

Upgrading STDM Configuration	?	×
Appending the upgraded profile		
0%		

It is not recommended to interrupt the upgrade process as the process involves your data. To reduce the risk of interruption, the progress bar cannot be closed by clicking on the close button. This also prevents QGIS from being closed.

Once the process is complete, you will be able to use STDM with the updated configuration, database and templates.

**Note**: Once you make a successful upgrade, you will no longer be able to upgrade an old configuration. The **Upgrade** button will be disabled.

# Annex A: Working with Spatial Data in QGIS

# Working with GPS

It is advisable to use GPS device in the open field to avoid obstruction from buildings and trees, which hinder visibility of satellites when collecting data. Working with GPS in an obstructive environment reduces the accuracy of the final data. Depending on the GPS device, a GPS receiver must be locked to signals from at least 3-4 satellites to be able to calculate the position. The higher the signal strength in terms of satellite signals, the higher the accuracy/reliability.

# **Before using GPS**

Global Positioning System (GPS) refers to a satellite-based navigation system constituting a constellation of 24 satellites and their ground stations.

The use of GPS circles around precise positioning of objects and people including scientific studies for the purpose of obtaining useful information relative to their geographic locations.

When using GPS, the GPS device needs to communicate with the satellite at real time to give the positions.

This is why it is advisable to use GPS device in the open field to avoid obstruction from buildings and trees, which hinder visibility of satellites and ultimately reduces the accuracy of the final data.

# What to know when using GPS in the field

While using GPS in the field it is important to take note of the following. What affects the accuracy of the data?

- Objects such as buildings, mountains, tall trees, etc. have a reflection effect to the transmitted signal which may cause delay to the received signal thereby introducing errors.
- These objects also have an obstruction effect, which blocks the signals and reduces the number of available satellites.
- The amount of humidity or density of the clouds in the atmosphere also affects the signal strength. It can slow down the signal as it passes through them, which affects the overall accuracy of the obtained position.

# Working with Garmin GPS data

Refer to Garmin website <u>www.garmin.com</u> for detailed description on how to capture data using Garmini GPS.

Having collected field data using the GPS, office work remains important to put the collected data to usable format.

Garmin by defaults stores its data in World Geodetic System (WGS 84).

This becomes easy to use as it can be overlaid to Google maps and other global maps or images.

Copyright © 2017 by UN-Habitat. All Rights Reserved

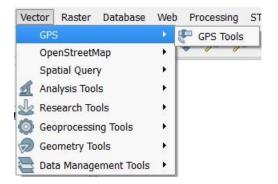
To learn how to download using STDM gps module, go to importing gps data

# **Downloading GPS Data from QGIS**

To download a GPS data from a GPS, follow the steps below.

- 1. Connect the GPS to your computer (i.e. using USB cable).
- 2. Ensure the device is visible in your computer.
- 3. Start QGIS normally.

**4.** Launch the GPS **plug-in** from QGIS, Vector **> GPS > GPS Tools** as shown in the image below.



If the GPS sub-menu is not visible under the Vector Menu, it means the plugin is not enabled. To enable the plugin, follow the sub-steps below.

a. Click on the **Plugins Menu** in QGIS Menu as shown below.



b. Click on Manage and Install Plugins... sub menu.

c. Click on **Installed** on the left side as shown in the image below. Then look for GPS Tool in the list of plugins in the search box as shown in the image below.

e 🜔 Plu	ugins   Installec	i (28)		? ×
🆄 Al	II.	Search		
In	nstalled	ြု ငို Dxf2Shp Converter		GPS Tools
- No	et in stalled	🗙 🕁 eVis		GF3 10013
	ot installed	📄 📺 First Aid		Tools for loading and importing GPS data
. 🤝 Up	pgradeable	🗙 🚄 fTools		
		🗙 👪 GdalTools		
2 🤝 Se	ettings	Geometry Checker		
		🔄 🚞 Geometry Snapper		Category: Vector
		K the Georeferencer GDAL		Installed version: Version 0.1 (in
		🗙 🍓 Partons		C:/PROGRA~1/QGISES~1/apps/qgis/plugins/gpsimporterplugin.dll)
		GRASS 7	5.5.5	
		🗙 🍗 Heatmap	222	
		Interpolation plugin		
		🗙 🔤 MetaSearch Catalogue Client		
n		Nearest Feature		
		🗙 🤿 OfflineEditing		
<b>.</b>		🗙 🧅 OpenLayers Plugin		
		🔄 🔩 Oracle Spatial GeoRaster		
		🗙 🧿 Plugin Reloader		
		🗙 🏶 Processing		
f		🗙 🍘 Raster Terrain Analysis plugin		CI
		🔲 🚬 Road graph plugin		
		🔄 🚭 Social Tenure Domain Model	÷	Upgrade all Uninstall plugin Reinstall plugin
u,				Close Help

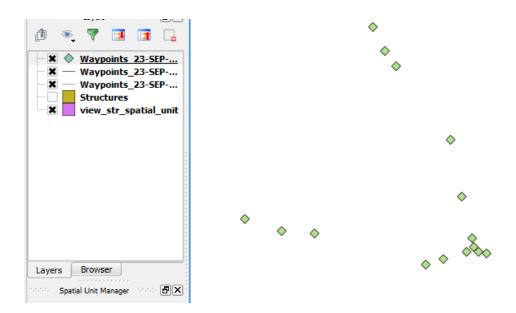
d. When you find the **GPS Tool**, enable the plugin by clicking on the checkbox in front of the label **GPS Tool**.

e. Click on the Close button at the bottom of the **Plugins** module.

A new dialog box appears that allows you to browse to the location of field data from the GPS.

<b>%</b>		GPS	Tools		?	×
Load GPX file	Import other file	Download from GPS	Upload to GPS	GPX Conversions		
File C:/User	s/Njogus/Desktop/sam	ple data/Waypoints_23-5	SEP-14.gpx		Browse	
Feature types	🗴 🗙 Waypoints					
	X Routes					
	X Tracks					
				ок	Cancel Help	,

- 5. Select on the first tab Load GPX file.
- 6. Browse to the location of GPS data and Click **OK**.



The loaded data should appear as scattered points depending on what was captured as shown in the image above.

7. Locate the **Waypoints** layer with a point icon in QGIS Layers Panel. In our example, the **Waypoint** with a point feature is the first layer. **Right-click** on it.

8. Select **Save as** in the shortcut panel and enter the details as required.

9. Specify the format, coordinate system for the new layer. If you do not specify the format, the source layer CRS original will be used as shown in the image below.

Note: For above data, the coordinate system used was: WGS 84.

For the format, **ESRI Shapefile** format is preferred because it is supported by many GIS software.

**Do not** check the **Skip attribute creation** check box.

10. Provide the output path.

- 11. Click on the checkbox **Add saved file to map.**
- 12. Click on the **OK button**.

A new layer will be created and added to the QGIS map canvas.

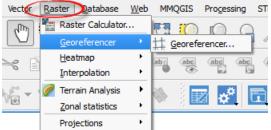
🌾 Save vector layer as ? 🗙				
Format ESRI Shapefile ▼ Save as ta/Digitized vector/strutures.shp Browse				
CRS Selected CRS (EPSG:4326, WGS 84) 🔻 🌚				
Encoding System 💌				
Save only selected features Skip attribute creation				
Symbology export No symbology 💌				
Scale 1:50000				
Extent (current: layer)				
Datasource Options				
Layer Options				
Custom Options				
OK Cancel Help				

# **Geo-referencing**

Geo-referencing is the process of introducing world real coordinates on to a raw image so that the final product is a spatially enabled map that can give location of features in the two-dimensional space.

Steps:

1. Click on the **raster menu** on the QGIS interface.

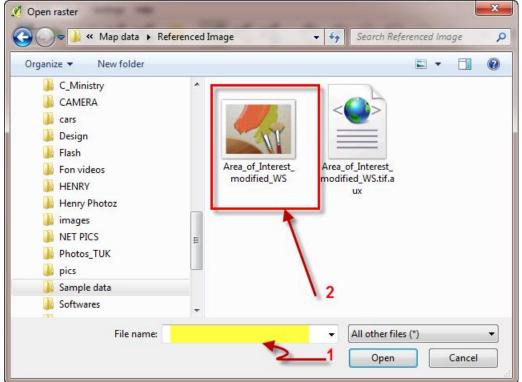


**2.** On the drop down content click **georeferencer** > **georeferencer**. A dialog box will appear. The **Georferencing** pop up window will appear, allowing you to load a raster image.

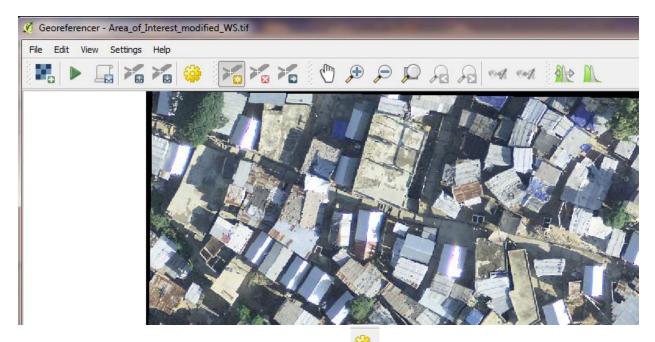
**3.** Click on the button that is highlight in the image below.

<b>%</b>				
File	Edit	View	Settings	Help
C				
(	Open ra	aster		

This allows you to browse to where the map is located.



4. Select the File name you wish to georeference (Many Image formats are supported).5.Click Open to load the map. The Raster Data is loaded on the Georeferening window as shown below.



**6.** To set properties of georeferencing, Click the icon (transformation settings). A dialog box pops up so that you can set the coordinate reference system.

10	Transformation settings ? ×				
Transformation type:	Helmert 🗸				
Resampling method:	Nearest neighbour				
Compression:	NONE				
Create world file					
Output raster:	Output raster: de data/Imagery/Area_of_Interest_modified_WS_tiff.tif				
Target SRS:	EPSG:4326				
Generate pdf map:					
Generate pdf report:					
Set Target Resolution					
Horizontal	1.00000				
Vertical	-1.00000				
Use 0 for transparency when needed					
🔀 Load in QGIS when done					
	OK Cancel Help				

Identify at least two points with well-known points on the map that you will use to georeference with.

Assign at least two ground control points (GCPs) to enable the georeferencing.

**Note:** Set the **Transformation type** as **Helmert** and **Resampling method** as **Nearest neighbour** so as not to change the colour code of pixel.

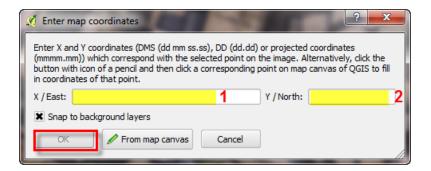
In the output raster, give the georeferenced image a name. Next, select the reference system to be used in Target SRS.

7. Select the Load in QGIS when done checkbox and click the OK button.

8. With identified points on the map and with their coordinates, Use the **Add Point** button (<sup>10</sup>) to add control points on the map.

Once you click at any point on the map, the popup below shows up allowing you to enter the coordinates of that point.

9. Do this for the other points and then click on the *OK* button for each pair of points entered.



10. In the **Georeferencing** popup window toolbar, click on the **Run** button ( ) to load all the points.

**11.** Then **close** the georeferencer dialog box.

**12.** Load the geo-referenced image using the icon (open raster) in the QGIS interface view for viewing the geo-referenced image.

Note: This is one way of entering the coordinates during the geo-referencing.

# Glossary

### A

Attribute Data: Attribute Data - refers to a textual data that is appended to a spatial data.

### D

**Database:** Database is a collection of information that is organized so that it can easily be accessed, managed, and updated. STDM uses relational Database software called PostgeSQL that provides the database for STDM.

**Dialog:** Dialog refers to a popup window that holds a feature of STDM or a message.

### E

- **Entity:** Entity, in STDM, refers to a distinct database table in which a specific data is stored. Examples of entities in STDM include person, parcel, etc.
- **Entity Browser:** Entity Browser refers to a table like module of STDM in which all records of an entity are loaded from the database table of the entity.

## F

**Feature:** Feature mainly refers to a single record that is composed of attribute information and spatial geometry. Feature could be a functionality of a system.

### G

- **Geo-referencing:** Geo-referencing is the process of introducing world real coordinates on to a raw image so that the final product is a spatially enabled map that can give location of features in the two-dimension space.
- **Geometry:** Geometry refers to a digital geographical extent or position a physical structure. The most common geometry in STDM is spatial unit that could be parcel, structure, house, and garden.
- **GIS:** Geographic Information System. GIS is a computer system for capturing, storing, checking, and displaying data related to positions on Earth's surface.
- **GLTN:** Global Land Tool Network. The Global Land Tool Network (GLTN) is an alliance of global regional and national partners contributing to poverty alleviation through land reform, improved land management and security of tenure particularly through the development and dissemination of pro-poor and gender-sensitive land tools.
- **GPS:** Geographic Positioning System. GPS is a global navigation satellite system (GNSS) that provides location and time information in all weather conditions, anywhere on or near the Earth.
- **GPX:** GPX refers to the file format that holds coordinates of any physical structure in a GPS Device. The GPX file needs to be uploaded to STDM using The GPS tool.

- **Line:** Line refers to a digital geographical bounder of a physical structure that doesn't have a close ending. This could be road and river.
- **Lookup Table:** Lookup Table refers to a table that is composed of frequently used lists such as tenure type, document type and any other list that you create. The lookup tables are created in the Configuration Wizard and are composed of lookup values that are the list of items and their corresponding codes. For instance, the gender lookup table has Male and Female Values. The code is an optional field which could be M for Male and F for Female. The lookups can be used as a drop down list in STD Forms that makes adding and editing records easy.

## Μ

Module: Module refers to an STDM window that has one or more functionality.

## Р

- **Party:** Party is a general term that refers to a person, individual, household, organization, institution or any other entity for which a spatial unit can be assigned with a relationship that is determined by social tenure type.
- **Point:** Point refers to a digital geographic position of any physical structure that is represented by a single point. A point data could represent towns, villages, and any other small structure.
- **Polygon:** Polygon refers to a digital geographic boundary of any physical structure that is represented by a completely enclosed physical structure.
- **PostGIS:** PostGIS is a free and open-source plugin of PostgeSQL, that gives PostgreSQL a spatial capability.
- **PostgreSQL:** PostgreSQL is an open source relational database management system that stores data in an organized manner.
- **Profile:** Profile refers to an STDM profile that is composed of entities, columns, lookups, and setting that is used to generate database tables that will be used by different modules of STDM.

## Q

- **QGIS:** QGIS (Quantum GIS) is a free and open-source Geographical Information System Software. QGIS is the software the hosts STDM. QGIS provides many features related to spatial data. STDM has extended and customized QGIS to fit STDM users' needs.
- **Querying:** Querying refers to the process of searching for data in a database.

### R

**Record:** Record refers to a single row in a database table.

### S

- **Shapefile (shp):** Shapefile (shp) is a popular geospatial file format that stores vector data such as points, lines, polygons, multipoints, multilines, and multipolygons. The extension of a shapefile is .shp.
- **Spatial:** Spatial refers anything related to space. The word spatial is used thought STDM to refer to any data or element that has digital absolute geographical location.
- **Spatial Unit**: Spatial Unit refers to an area of land or water that is associated with people with a certain right as specified by a concerned body. A spatial unit is a spatial entity with a distinct geographical coordinates. A spatial unit is linked to a party through Social Tenure Relationship Wizard. Spatial unit could be parcel, garden, structure, etc.
- **SQL:** Structured Query Language. SQL is a programming language used to communicate with database servers such as PostgreSQL Server.

**STDM:** Social Tenure Domain Model

STR: Social Tenure Relationship

## Т

**Table:** Table - refers to a storage location. In STDM you can create a table by simply creating an entityin STDM Configuration Wizard.

## V

**View:** View refers a database table that stores queries and display data as a table. In STDM, the default view starts with vw prefix.

### W

- **WGS84:** The World Geodetic System 1984. WGS84 is a datum featuring coordinates that change with time. WGS84 is defined and maintained by the United States National Geospatial-Intelligence Agency (NGA).
- **Wizard:** Wizard refers to a window that has multiple pages, in which you can go from one page to another by clicking the next and back buttons. STDM has few wizard type modules, such as the Configuration Wizard, the New Social Tenure relationship, the Import Wizard, and the Export Wizard.

# Index

### А

Adding 216, 227 Photo 227 STDM Data Labels 216 Adding Imagery data 142

#### В

Before installing 21 Before using GPS 309

### С

**Content Authorization 300** 

### D

Data Management Working with Modules 113 Downloading GPS data from QGIS 310

#### Ε

Export Data from the STDM 288

### F

Formating spreadsheet data 263

#### G

Geo-referencing 313 Getting Started 40 Getting Technical Support 19

#### I

Importing Attribute Data 266 Importing GPS data 154 Importing Spatial Data 270 Installing From GLTN Plugin Repository 25 Introduction 2

#### L

Logging out of STDM 44

#### М

Managing administrative unit 113

#### Ρ

Photo 227 Adding 227 Preface 1

#### R

Role Management 297

#### S

STDM Data Labels 216 Adding 216 STDM Document Designer 195

### Т

Testing platforms 19

### U

User Interface 38 User Management 294 User Mappings 299 Using Bundled STDM installer 22

#### W

What's new 2 Working with GPS 309 Working with Sample Data 45